Homage to Amitabha! Be mindful of Amitabha!

*May every living being, drowning and adrift,
Soon return to the Land of Limitless Light!*
THE DHAMMAPADA

PĀLI TEXT AND TRANSLATION WITH STORIES IN BRIEF AND NOTES

By

NARADA THERA

2538-1993
THE PALI ALPHABET
PRONUNCIATION OF LETTERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>as u in but</th>
<th>ñ</th>
<th>as gn is Signor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>&quot;a&quot; art</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>&quot;t&quot; not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>&quot;i&quot; pin</td>
<td>&quot;d&quot; hid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>&quot;i&quot; machine</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>&quot;n&quot; hint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>&quot;u&quot; put</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>&quot;p&quot; lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū</td>
<td>&quot;u&quot; rule</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>&quot;b&quot; rib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>&quot;e&quot; ten</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>&quot;m&quot; him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>&quot;a&quot; fate</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>&quot;y&quot; yard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>&quot;o&quot; hot</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>&quot;r&quot; rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>&quot;o&quot; note</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>&quot;l&quot; sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>&quot;k&quot; key</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>&quot;v&quot; vile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>&quot;g&quot; get</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>&quot;s&quot; sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td>&quot;ng&quot; ring</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>&quot;h&quot; kut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>&quot;ch&quot; rich</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>&quot;l&quot; felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>&quot;j&quot; jug</td>
<td>&quot;ng&quot; sing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vowels "e" and "o" are always long, except when followed by a double consonant, e.g., ettha, otttha.

There is no difference between the pronunciation of "ñ" and "m". The former never stands at the end, but is always followed by a consonant of its group.

The dentals "t" and "d" are pronounced with the tip of the tongue placed against the front upper teeth.

The aspirates "kh", "gh", "ṭh", "ḍh", "th", "dh", "ph", "bh" are pronounced with "h" sound immediately following, as in blockhead, pighead, cathead, loghead, etc. where the "h" in each is combined with the preceding consonant in pronunciation.
CONTENTS

Chapter
The Pāli Alphabet i
Preface vii
1. Yamaka Vagga .. The Twin Verses 1
2. Appamāda Vagga .. Heedfulness 23
3. Citta Vagga .. Mind 34
4. Puppha Vagga .. Flowers 47
5. Bāla Vagga .. Fools 61
6. Paññita Vagga .. The Wise 73
7. Arahanta Vagga .. The Worthy 83
8. Sahassa Vagga .. Thousands 95
9. Pāpa Vagga .. Evil 110
10. Dāṇḍa Vagga .. The Rod or Punishment 123
   .. Old Age 135
11. Jarā Vagga .. The Self 143
12. Atta Vagga .. The World 152
13. Loka Vagga .. The Buddha 162
14. Buddha Vagga .. Happiness 173
15. Sukha Vagga .. Affection 181
16. Piya Vagga .. Anger 189
17. Krodha Vagga .. Impurities or Taints 197
18. Mala Vagga .. The Just or The Righteous 209
19. Dhamaṭṭha Vagga .. The Way or The Path 220
20. Magga Vagga .. Miscellaneous 232
21. Pakinnaka Vagga .. Woeful State 242
22. Niraya Vagga .. The Elephant 251
23. Nāga Vagga .. Craving 259
24. Tanhā Vagga .. The Bhikkhu or the Mendicant 274
25. Bhikkhu Vagga .. The Brāhmaṇa 288
26. Brāhmaṇa Vagga Index 321
PREFACE

Buddhism appeals both to the masses and to the intelligentsia. It offers milk for the babe and meat for the strong. It presents one way of life to the members of the Holy Order and another to the laity. Above all, it expounds a unique Path of Enlightenment.

All these characteristics are featured in the Dhammapada, one of the thirty-one books that comprise the Tipitaka, the three Baskets which contain the quintessence of the Buddha’s Teachings.

Any truth-seeker, irrespective of his religious beliefs, can read this book of Wisdom with interest and profit. By constantly reflecting on these golden sayings and by translating them into action in the course of one’s daily life, a religious-minded person can gain spiritual bliss that transcends worldly happiness and can attain to a higher spiritual plane whereby he can purify himself and try to purify and enlighten others both by example and by precept.

The Dhammapada is not a book to be read superficially like a novel and shelved aside. It should be read and re-read so that it may serve as a constant companion for inspiration, solace, and edification in times of need.
The Dhammapada was not preached by the Buddha in the present form. Three months after the Passing Away of the Buddha, the Arahants, who assembled at the First Convocation to rehearse the Teachings of the Buddha, collected some of the poetic utterances of the Buddha, which He expounded on different occasions, arranged and classified the treatise in its present form, naming it the Dhammapada.

The Pali term *Dhamma*, Sanskrit *Dharma*, is one of the most difficult words to be translated into English as it has many meanings. It has to be understood according to the context. Here it is used in the sense of Sayings or Teachings of the Buddha. *Pada* implies sections, portions, parts, or way. Dhammapada may be rendered, “Sections or Portions of the Dhamma”, “The Way of the Dhamma”. It is somewhat difficult to offer a graceful English equivalent according to its literal meaning. “The Way of Truth”, “The Way of Righteousness”, “The Path of Virtue”, are renderings that have been suggested by various scholars.

The Dhammapada consists of 423 melodious Pali verses, uttered by the Buddha on about 300 occasions, to suit the temperaments of the listeners in the course of His preaching tours during His ministry of forty-five years. Circumstances that led to these noble utterances are presented in the form of long or short stories, together with traditional interpretations of the Pali verses and technical terms, in the voluminous commentary written by
Buddhaghosa. This valuable commentary has been ably translated by E. W. Burlingham for the Harvard Oriental Series. It may be remarked that most of these verses are better understood when read with the context.

The gems of truth embodied in these texts aptly illustrate the moral and philosophical Teachings of the Buddha.

The very first two stanzas briefly represent the ethico-philosophical system of the Buddha. The importance of the mind in assessing morality, the Buddhist law of moral causation (Kamma), the problem of pain and happiness, self-responsibility, etc., accompanied by two simple homely illustrations, find expression in these twin verses. The two relevant stories clarify the points at issue. The very first line of each of these twin verses presents some difficulty, especially the term Dhammā. Commentary gives a long interpretation. The two connected stories make the matter clear.

The verses dealing with hatred and its appeasement are of special significance in this atomic age. Force will certainly be met with force. Bombs will be met with bombs. Vengeance will be met with vengeance. Retaliation never leads to peace. Buddha’s advice to His non-violent followers is: “Hatreds never cease through hatred, but through love alone they cease”. Mettā or loving-kindness is the only answer to modern bombs.
The high ethical standard the Buddha expects from His ideal followers are depicted in some verses. The last two verses of the first chapter indicate the Buddha's attitude towards mere learning and actual practice. The Dhamma is to be studied with the object of practising it. As such the Dhamma is compared to a raft whereby one crosses the ocean of Samsāra. The very last verse is alone sufficient for an ideal Bhikkhu for his whole lifetime.

How the Buddha exercises His psychic powers to transform a lust-ridden, mentally sick Bhikkhu to a pure, spiritually healthy individual is evident from the story of prince Nanda, His step-brother, and the verses uttered concerning him.

In obedience to the Buddha, though with reluctance, prince Nanda entered the Order on his wedding day. As he was constantly thinking of his bride-elect without being intent on the Holy life, the Buddha, instead of adopting the usual direct method of instruction, devised an effective practical way to divert his attention to a seemingly more desirable similar object and succeeded in making him an Arahant. See vv. 13-14.

The first two chapters mainly deal with the ethics of Buddhism and are of equal importance to both Bhikkhus and laymen.

The second chapter is a cogent answer to those critics who try to denounce Buddhism as "a dead hand". Appamāda, which denotes heed-
fulness, vigilance, earnestness, watchfulness and other allied meanings, is the name given to the second chapter.

It was the first verse on heedfulness occurring in this chapter that completely transformed the character of King Asoka the Righteous, who was originally stigmatised—Asoka the Wicked—owing to his atrocities perpetrated before his conversion to Buddhism.

At times a single verse like the foregoing, a solitary line like

"Seek no delight in worldly favours, but cultivate seclusion",

or a pregnant word like "Strive" is alone sufficient for a whole lifetime.

The verse 24, which deals with causes that tend to worldly progress, shows that Buddhism is not absolutely other-worldly as some hasty critics are apt to think.

The third chapter is of special significance as it enables one to understand the Buddhist conception of the mind and the importance of mind control.

The chapters on Pleasures, Happiness, Hell, Evil, World, Flowers, the Fool, the Wise, Craving, etc., will prove very helpful to those who are engrossed in material pleasures. The illusive nature of worldly happiness and the kind of life one should lead in such a deluded world are shown in these chapters.
The chapters on the Buddha, the Arahant, the Brāhmaṇa will particularly appeal to those of a higher spiritual level. They depict the moral attitude of really enlightened beings.

One should not rest satisfied with a mere perusal of these golden sayings. They should be read, re-read, and pondered upon, together with the accompanying stories, drawing appropriate lessons therefrom. These interesting and edifying anecdotes clearly depict the greatness of the Buddha as an energetic, compassionate and wise Teacher, ever ready to serve all. All these noble utterances should be put into actual practice in the course of one’s daily life. Then only may one rightly say in the words of the Dhammapada:—

“Happily he lives who drinks of the Dhamma”.

Readers will note the simplicity of the similes employed by the Buddha, which are intelligible even to a child. Take, for instance, the similes of the cart’s wheel, man’s shadow, the ill-thatched house, the sleeping village, clear deep lake, fragrant beautiful flower, a bee extracting honey, etc. The wisdom of the Buddha lies in His exposition of profound truths in such plain terms.

There is not a single verse in the Dhammapada that can be dismissed as unintelligible to a lay reader.

Direct teaching is the Buddha’s usual method of exposition. At times He exercises His psychic powers, not miracles, in order to enlighten His less intelligent hearers or to give an actual demonstration to a concrete truth. See vv. 146-147-148.
To a fisherman, named Ariya, meaning noble, whom He saw fishing, the Buddha said, "He is not an Ariya who is engaged in killing animals". The man realized his ignoble act and later became a Noble in the strictest sense of the term. See v. 270.

In the Dhammapada there are several instances to show that the Buddha preached not only to the intelligentsia but also to little children in their own language. He was accessible to all. See v. 131.

In preparing this translation I have consulted with profit the learned articles on the Dhammapada written by my revered teacher, the Venerable P. Siri Vajirāṇāna Mahā Nāyaka Thera, the ancient Sinhala translation, and almost all the available English translations. Special care was taken not to deviate from the traditional commentarial interpretations.

My first translation of the Dhammapada appeared in 1940, with a Foreword by Dr. Cassius A. Pereira (later Kassapa Thera). Subsequently, the Mahabodhi Society of India published two revised pocket editions. Another revised edition was published in the Wisdom of the East Series in 1954 with a scholarly Introduction by Dr. E. J. Thomas, followed by a reprint in 1959. In this present latest edition several improvements have been made, copious notes have been added mainly for the benefit of those who are not acquainted with the fundamentals of the Dhamma, and relevant stories are given in brief in order to make the texts more intelligible to the readers.
I am grateful to Mr. S. W. Wijayatilaka, ex-Principal of Ananda College, Colombo, for carefully revising my manuscript and offering many valued suggestions.

NĀRADA

Vajirārāma,
Colombo 5.

9th May, 1971.
THE DHAMMAPADA

Nama tassa Bhagavato Arahato Sammā Sambuddhassa!

Homage to Him, the Exalted, the Worthy, the Fully Enlightened One!

——

Chapter 1

YAMAKA¹ VAGGA
THE TWIN VERSES

——

1. Manopubbaṅgamā dhammā² — manoseṭṭhā manomayā
   Manasā ce paduṭṭhena — bhāsati vā karoti vā
   Tato nam dukkhamanveti — cakkam'va vahato padam. 1

——

EVIL BEGETS EVIL

1. Mind is the forerunner of (all evil) states³. Mind is chief; mind-made are they. If one speaks or acts with wicked mind, because of that, suffering follows one, even as the wheel follows the hoof of the draught-ox.

11096—2
Story

A middle-aged devout person, named Cakkhu-pāla, became a monk and was energetically leading a contemplative life. As a result of his strenuous endeavour he realized Arahantship⁴, the final stage of Sainthood, but unfortunately went blind.

One day as he was pacing up and down the ambulatory he unintentionally killed many insects. Some visiting monks, noticing the blood-stained ambulatory, complained to the Buddha that he had committed the offence of killing. The Buddha explained that the monk had killed them unintentionally and that he was an Arahant.

The monks then wished to know the cause of his blindness.

The Buddha related that in a past birth, as a physician, that particular monk had given an ointment to a poor woman to restore her eyesight. She promised that, with her children, she would become his servants if her eyesight was restored. The physician’s remedy proved effective, but the woman, not willing to keep her promise, pretended that her eyes were getting worse. The cruel physician, yielding to a wicked thought, retaliated by giving her another ointment which blinded her eyes. In consequence of his past evil action the Arahant became blind.

* * * * *

This is the retributive aspect of the law of Kamma, the other being the continuative aspect.
that is—the transmission of individual characteristics, impressions, tendencies, etc. throughout one's wanderings in Samsāra.

An Arahant, though free from all impurities, has to reap the fruit of the seed he himself had sown in the remote past.

The Buddhas and Arahants do not accumulate fresh Kamma as they have eradicated the roots—ignorance and craving—but, as every other being, they are not exempt from the inevitable consequences of both good and bad past actions.

1. *Yamaka* means a pair. This chapter is so named because it consists of ten pairs of parallel verses.

2. *Dhamma* is a term of many meanings. Here it is used in the sense of Kamma or Karma which denotes volition (*cetanā*) and the other accompanying mental states found in any particular moral or immoral type of consciousness. In this verse the term *Dhamma* refers to evil mental states (*cetasikas*). Without a mind or consciousness no such mental states arise. Hence mind is the forerunner of all good and bad mental states. *Cetanā* or volition is the most important of all mental states. It is this volition that constitutes Kamma, for the Buddha says—"I declare that *cetanā* (volition) is Kamma".

Mind precedes all actions and serves as the principal element both in performing and in
assessing deeds. It is mind that rules and shapes action. Words and deeds are also produced by mind.

In this pair of parallel verses the Buddha emphasizes the great part the mind plays in man’s life, and then explains how deeds become good or evil according to the pure and impure state of the mind. Lastly, He speaks of the inevitable consequences of such deeds, giving two homely illustrations.

3. “Things are forerun by mind”—Mrs. Rhys Davids.

“(The mental) natures are the result of what we have thought”—Radhakrishnan.

“All that we are is the result of what we have thought”—Irving Babbit.

4. Arahat, literally, means a Worthy One or a Pure One who has destroyed all passions. He accumulates no more fresh Kamma to condition a future rebirth as he has eradicated ignorance and craving. He has put an end to both birth and death. He may reap the effects of his past good and bad Kamma till the expiration of the life-term of his last existence.

2. *Manopubbangamā dhammā*\(^1\)

\[\text{manoseṭṭhā manomaya}^\text{a}\]

*Manasā ce pasannena*

\[\text{bhāsati vā karoti vā}\]

*Tato nam sukhamanveti*

\[\text{chāyā’va anapāyini}.\]
GOOD BEGETS GOOD

2. Mind is the forerunner of (all good) states. Mind is chief; mind-made are they. If one speaks or acts with pure mind, because of that, happiness follows one, even as one's shadow that never leaves².

Story

Maṭṭakundali, the only son of a stingy millionaire, was suffering from jaundice and was on the verge of death because his father would not consult a physician lest some part of his money should have to be spent. The Buddha, perceiving with His Divine Eye the sad plight of the dying boy, appeared before him. Seeing the Buddha, he was pleased, and, dying with a pure heart, full of faith in the Buddha, was born in a heavenly state.

1. In this particular verse dhamma refers to good Kamma (action).

2. These two parallel verses were uttered by the Buddha on two different occasions to show the inevitable effects of evil and good Kamma respectively.

Man reaps what he has sown in the past or in the present. What he sows now he reaps in the present or in the future at the opportune moment. Man himself is mainly responsible
for his own happiness and misery. He creates his own hell and heaven. He is the architect of his own fate. What he makes he can unmake.

Buddhism teaches self-responsibility and the inevitability of the law of cause and effect.

What one reaps accords with what one has sown, but one is not bound to reap the effects of all that one has sown. If one were, emancipation would become an impossibility.

3. Akkocchi maṁ avadhi maṁ —
   ajini maṁ ahāsi me
   Ye tam upanayhanti —
   veram tesam na sammati. 3.

4. Akkocchi maṁ avadhi maṁ —
   ajini maṁ ahāsi me
   Ye tam na upanayhanti —
   veram tesūpasammati. 4.

RETLATION DOES NOT LEAD TO PEACE

3. “He abused me, he beat me, he defeated me, he robbed me”, in those who harbour such thoughts hatred is not appeased. 3.

4. “He abused me, he beat me, he defeated me, he robbed me”, in those who do not harbour such thoughts hatred is appeased 4.
THE TWIN VERSES

Story

The Venerable Tissa, proud of being a cousin of the Buddha, did not pay due respect to the senior monks. When they resented his improper conduct, he took offence and, threatening them, went up to the Buddha and made a complaint. The Buddha, who understood the position, advised him to apologize, but the Venerable Tissa was obstinate. The Buddha then related a story to show that Tissa had done likewise in a previous birth. Later, the Venerable Tissa was compelled to seek pardon from the senior monks.

1. The Buddha’s constant advice to His followers is not to retaliate but to practise patience at all times, at all places, even under provocation. The Buddha extols those who bear and forbear the wrongs of others though they have the power to retaliate. In the Dhammapada itself there are many instances to show how the Buddha practised patience even when He was severely criticised, abused, and attacked. Patience is not a sign of weakness or defeatism but the unfailing strength of great men and women.

---

**ANGER IS CONQUERED BY LOVE**

5. Hatreds never cease through hatred in this world; through love they cease. This is an eternal law.

---

**Story**

A husband had two wives, one barren, the other fruitful. The former, actuated by jealousy, mixed a drug in her rival’s food and caused two successive abortions. On the third occasion the potion caused the death both of the mother and of the child. The dying woman willed vengeance on her rival and her offspring, and she carried out her resolve. The other too did likewise. Thus both women avenged themselves in the course of two successive births. In their third birth circumstances, however, compelled both to meet the Buddha, who pacified them by advising them not to retaliate.

---

1. *Avera*, literally, means non-anger. Here it means the virtue opposed to the vice of anger, that is, loving-kindness (*Mettā*).

2. *Sanantana*, an ancient principle followed by the Buddha and His disciples. (Commentary).
THE TWIN VERSES

6. *Pare ca na vijānanti* — *mayamettha yamāmase*
   *Ye ca tattha vijānanti* — *tato sammanti medhagā.* 6.

---

QUARRELS CEASE THROUGH RIGHT THINKING

6. The others¹ know not that in this quarrel we perish²; those of them who realize it, have their quarrels calmed thereby³.

---

Story

A trivial incident led to an unfortunate dispute amongst the monks in the city of Kosambi. The quarrelsome monks did not listen even to the Buddha. In the end the Buddha retired to a forest and spent the rainy season there. Owing to pressure brought on them by the laity, the monks approached the Buddha and, imploring His pardon, invited Him to the city. The Buddha then admonished them.

---

1. The quarrelsome persons.
2. *Yamāmase*, derived from *yam*, to perish, or to restrain.
3. The first line may also be rendered thus: Others do not know that here we must restrain ourselves.
   “The world does not know that we must all come to an end here” — Max Muller.
   “People do not discern that here we straitened are in life, in time” — Mrs. Rhys Davids.
7. Subhānupassīṁ viharantam —
    indriyesu asānvutam
Bhojanamhi amattaññum —
    kusītam hīnaviriyaṁ
Tam ve pasahati māro —
    vāto rukkhaṁ'va dubbalam 7.

8. Asubhānupassīṁ viharantam —
    indriyesu susānvutam
Bhojanamhi ca mattaññum —
    saddham āraddhaviriyaṁ
Tam ve nappasahati māro —
    vāto selam'va pabbatam. 8.

THE WEAK SUCCUMB TO TEMPTATION
BUT NOT THE STRONG

7. Whoever lives contemplating pleasant things¹, with senses unrestrained, in food immoderate, indolent, inactive, him verily Māra² overthrows, as the wind (overthrows) a weak tree.

8. Whoever lives contemplating “the Impurities”;³ with senses restrained, in food moderate, full of faith,⁴ full of sustained energy, him Māra overthrows not, as the wind (does not overthrow) a rocky mountain.⁵

Story
Two brothers became monks, the elder by conviction and the younger without any faith. The
THE TWIN VERSES

faithless younger monk, constantly thinking of material pleasures, succumbed to the temptations of his former wives and left the Order. The devout elder monk strove hard and attained Arahangship. His former wives tried to entrap him but failed.

1. Desiring pleasurable sensual objects.

2. According to Buddhism there are five kinds of Māra — namely, i. the five Aggregates (khandha), ii. moral and immoral activities (abhisāṅkhāra), iii. death (maccu), iv. passions (kilesa), and v. Māra the deity (devaputta). Here the term Māra is used in the sense of passions.

3. The thirty-two impurities of the body such as hair, hair of the skin, nails, teeth, skin, etc. To overcome lust, meditation on the impurities of the body is recommended.

4. Saddhā is faith in the Buddha (the Teacher), the Dhamma (the Teaching) and the Sangha (the Order), based on knowledge. There is no blind faith in Buddhism. One is not expected to accept anything on mere unquestioning faith.

5. These two verses are meant exclusively for Bhikkhus who lead the Holy Life. The first verse indicates the worldly path of sense-gratification; the second, the spiritual path of sense-control and asceticism. It should be noted that Buddhism offers one way of life to the monks and another to the laity.
9. Anikkasāvo kāsāvam
    yo vattham paridahessati
Apeto damasaccena —
    na so kāsāvam arahati. 9.

10. Yo ca vantakasāv'assa —
    silesu susamāhito
Upeto damasaccena —
    sa ve kāsāvam arahati. 10.

THE PURE ARE WORTHY OF THE YELLOW ROBE BUT NOT THE IMPURE

9. Whoever, unstainless, without self control and truthfulness, should don the yellow robe,¹ is not worthy of it.

10. He who is purged of all stain, is well-established in morals and endowed with self-control and truthfulness, is indeed worthy of the yellow robe.

Story

On a majority vote people presented a costly robe to the Venerable Devadatta, in preference to the Venerable Sāriputta, the first chief disciple of the Buddha. Some devout followers, seeing him wearing it, remarked that he was not worthy of it. Buddha pointed out that in a previous birth too he
had done likewise and explained who was worthy of wearing the emblem of the saintly disciples.

I. Kasāva means stains of passion. Kāsāva means a dyed robe, the outward symbol of renunciation. Robes of monks are dyed to make them valueless. Here is a play on words. External mark of the Holy Life is of no consequence without internal purity. On another occasion the Buddha remarked that a pure person is indeed an ideal recluse or Bhikkhu, irrespective of his external apparel. See v. 142.

II. Asāre sāramatino — sāre cāsāradassino
   Te sāram nādhigacchanti —
   micchāsāṅkappagocarā.  

II. Sāraṇ ca sārato ṇatvā —
   asāraṇ ca asārato
   Te sāram adhigacchanti —
   sammā saṅkappagocarā.

RIGHT PERCEPTION LEADS TO THE REALIZATION OF TRUTH

II. In the unessential they imagine the essential,¹ in the essential they see the unessential, — they who entertain (such) wrong thoughts never realize the essence.
12. What is essential they regard as essential, what is unessential they regard as unessential,—they who entertain (such) right thoughts realize the essence.

—

Story

The Venerable Sāriputta and Moggallāna mentioned to the Buddha that they could not persuade their former teacher to see the Buddha and hear His Dhamma as he was attached to his followers. The Buddha then explained the difference between those who think rightly and those who think wrongly and the inevitable results of such thinking.

—

1. Sāra means the core or essence. Asāra are the unessentials like the necessaries of life, false beliefs, etc. Sāra are the essentials like right beliefs, (samma diṭṭhi) morality (sīla), concentration (samādhi), wisdom (paññā), etc. The essence of the Holy Life cannot be achieved by caring for unessentials.

In the Mahā Sāropama Sutta (Majjhima Nikāya, No. 29) the Buddha has compared the leaves and branches of a tree to gain and fame, the bark to morality, the greenwood to concentration, the fruits to the five kinds of super-intellect (abhiññā) and the core to Arahantship.

2. Such as lust (kāma), illwill (vyāpāda), and harmfulness (vihimsā).
THE TWIN VERSES

3. Such as renunciation or non-attachment (nekkhamma), loving-kindness (avyāpāda) and harmlessness (avīhimsā).

These pure thoughts constitute the second factor of the Noble Eightfold Path.

13. Yathā'gāram ducchannam —
vuṭṭhi samatīvijjhati

Evāṁ abhāvitam cittam —
rāgo samatīvijjhati.  

14. Yathā'gāram succchannam —
vuṭṭhi na samatīvijjhati

Evāṁ subhāvitam cittam —
rāgo na samatīvijjhati.  

LUST PIERCES THE HEARTS OF THE UNDEVELOPED BUT NOT THOSE OF THE DEVELOPED

13. Even as rain penetrates an ill-thatched house, so does lust penetrate an undeveloped mind.

14. Even as rain does not penetrate a well-thatched house, so does lust not penetrate a well-developed mind.

Story

Prince Nanda, the step-brother of the Buddha, was admitted by the Buddha into the
Order on his wedding day. As he was constantly thinking of his bride-elect instead of meditating, the Buddha employed an effective means whereby the Venerable Nanda renounced his former lustful thoughts and attained Arahantship. The Buddha compared his former state of mind to an ill-thatched house and his changed pure mental state to a well-thatched house.

1. Bhāvitāṁ, lit., made to become, i.e., trained, cultivated, developed. Mind is trained by concentration, which leads to one-pointedness of the mind and mental purification, and by contemplation, which leads to the understanding of things as they truly are. The ultimate goal of a Buddhist is achieved by these two stages of mental development. As physical exercise is to the body, so is meditation to the mind. A well-developed mind is not easily dominated by passions.

15. Idha socati pecca socati —
   pāpakāri ubhayattha socati
So socati so vihaññati —
   disvā kammakiliṭṭham attano. 15.

EVIL-DOERS SUFFER HERE AND HEREAFTER

15. Here he grieves,¹ hereafter he grieves.² In both states the evil-doer grieves. He grieves,
THE TWIN VERSES

he is afflicted, perceiving the impurity of his own deeds. 15.

Story

A pork-butcher, named Cunda, who lived by killing pigs throughout his lifetime, was subject to much suffering in his last days. Before dying, he rolled on the floor, actually squealing like a pig. After death he was born in a woeful state.

1. Repenting over his evil deeds, he suffers mentally.
2. Experiencing the effects of his evil deeds.

16. Idha modati pecca modati —
    katapuñño ubhayattha modati.
    So modati so pamoḍati —
    disvā kammavisuddhamattano. 16.

HAPPY ARE THE WELL-DOERS HERE AND HEREAFTER

16. Here he rejoices¹, hereafter he rejoices.² In both states the well-doer rejoices. He rejoices, exceedingly rejoices, perceiving the purity of his own deeds. 16.

Story

A devout person, named Dhammika, who led a religious life, lying on his death-bed,³ saw
happy visions, and after a peaceful death, was born in a celestial plane.¹

1. Reflecting on his good action.
2. Reaping the desirable results of his good deeds.
3. According to Buddhism the subsequent birth is determined by the thought process at the moment of death.
4. Buddhists do not believe that the earth is the only habitable plane and that human beings are the only beings. Planes are numerous and beings are innumerable.

After death one may be born as a human being or in a subhuman state or in a celestial plane according to one’s actions. The so-called being in the subsequent life is neither the same as its predecessor (as it has changed) nor absolutely different (as it is the identical stream of life). Buddhism denies an identical being but affirms an identity in process.

¹7. *Idha tappati pecca tappati* — 
   *pāpakāri ubhayattha tappati*
   *Pāpan me katan ti tappati* —
   *bhiyyo tappati duggatim gato.* ¹7.

**THE EVIL-DOER LAMENTS HERE AND HEREAFTER**

¹7. Here he suffers, hereafter he suffers. In both states the evil-doer suffers. “Evil have I done”
THE TWIN VERSES

(thinking thus), he suffers. Furthermore, he suffers, having gone to a woeful state. 17.

Story

The Venerable Devadatta made an unsuccessful attempt to kill the Buddha. In his old age he repented and desired to see the Buddha. While he was being carried on a litter to see the Buddha, he died on the way under tragic circumstances.

1. Duggati is a woeful state and Sugati is a blissful state. Rebirths in all such states are temporary.

18. Idha nandati pecca nandati —
   kata puñño ubhayattha nandati
Puññam me katan ti nandati —
   bhiyyo nandati suggatim gato. 18.

HAPPY ARE THE RIGHTEOUS

18. Here he is happy, hereafter he is happy. In both states the well-doer is happy. “Good have I done” (thinking thus), he is happy. Furthermore, is he happy, having gone to a blissful state.

Story

Sumanā, the youngest daughter of Anāthapiṇḍika, the chief supporter of the Buddha, lying on
her death-bed, addressed her father as “younger brother” and passed away peacefully. The father was grieved to hear his devout daughter utter such incoherent words at the moment of death. When he mentioned this matter to the Buddha He explained that she addressed him thus because she had attained the second stage of Sainthood—Sakadāgāmi (Once-Returner) while the father had attained only the first stage Sotāpatti (Stream-Winner).

19. Bahum pi ce sahitāṁ bhāsamāno —
na takkarō hoti naro pamoṭto
Gopo’vo gāvo gaṇayāṁ paresaṁ —
na bhāgavā sāmaññaśa hoti. 19.

20. Appam pi ce sahitāṁ bhāsamāno —
dhammassa hoti anudhammaṃcāri
Rāgañ ca dosañ ca pahāya mohām —
sammappajāno suvinuticatto
Anupādiyāno idha vā hurām vā —
sa bhāgavā sāmaññaśa hoti. 20.

LEARNING WITHOUT PRACTICE
IS OF NO WORTH

19. Though much he recites the Sacred Texts,¹ but acts not accordingly, that heedless man is like a cowherd who counts others’ kine. He has no share in the fruits² of the Holy Life.³ 19.

20
THE TWIN VERSES

20. Though little he recites the Sacred Texts, but acts in accordance with the teaching, forsaking lust, hatred and ignorance, truly knowing, with mind well freed, clinging to naught here and hereafter, he shares the fruits of the Holy Life. 20.

Story

There were two monks—one a worldling but well-versed in the Dhamma, the other an Arahant though not so erudite. The worldling did not practise what he knew; the one who knew little practised the Dhamma and, realizing Nibbāna, enjoyed the fruits of the Holy Life. The scholarly monk desired to embarrass the other by putting some intricate questions in the presence of the Buddha. Knowing well his base motive, the Buddha raised some questions connected with the realization of the Dhamma. The Arahant answered them all from personal experience, but the other could not as he had not attained to any Paths of Sainthood. Thereupon the Buddha praised the Arahant who had practised His teaching, though possessing less knowledge of the Dhamma.

1. Sahitām = saha + hitam, is that which is associated with what is beneficial. Commentary states that sahitām is a synonym for the Tipiṭaka, the three Baskets, taught by the Buddha, namely, Vinaya Piṭaka, the Basket
of Discipline, Sutta Piṭaka, the Basket of Discourses, and Abhidhamma Piṭaka, the Basket of Ultimate Doctrine.

2. The blessings of a monk are the four stages of Sainthood — namely, Sotāpatti, Stream-Winner, Sakadāgāmi, Once — Returner, Anāgāmi, Never-Returner, and Arahanta, the Worthy.

3. Sāmaññassa = lit., the state of a monk or ascetic, i.e., the Holy Life.
According to Buddhism learning is of no avail without actual practice.
As such Buddhism is not a mere philosophy, but a unique Path of Enlightenment.
Chapter 2

APPAMĀDA VAGGA
HEEDFULNESS

1. Appamādo amatapadaṁ —
   paṁḍaṁ-maccuno paḍaṁ
   
   Appammattā na miyanti —
   ye paṁattā yathā mataḥ.

2. Etam visesato ṇatvā —
   appamādamhi paṇḍita
   
   Appamāde pamoḍanti —
   ariyānaṁ gocare ratā.

3. Te jhāyino sātakā —
   ục̄cām daḷhapaṛakkāmā
   
   Phusanti dhīrā nibbānaṁ —
   yogakkheśam anuttaram.

THE HEEDLESS DIE; THE HEEDFUL
DO NOT

1. Heedfulness¹ is the path to the deathless;² heedlessness is the path to death. The heedful do not die;³ the heedless are like unto the dead.  21.

23
2. Distinctly understanding this (difference,)
the wise (intent) on heedfulness rejoice in
heedfulness, delighting in the realm of the
Ariyas.  

3. The constantly meditative, the ever
steadfastly ones realize the bond-free, supreme
Nibbāna.

Story

A jealous queen Māgandiyā, caused an inno-
cent rival of hers, Sāmāvatī, to be burnt alive. The
king, hearing of the pathetic incident, subjected
Māgandiyā to a worse death. The monks wished to
know which of the two was actually alive and
which was actually dead. The Buddha explained
that the heedless, like Māgandiyā, should be
regarded as dead, while the heedful, like
Sāmāvatī, should be regarded as alive.

1. Appamāda, literally, means non-infatuation,
i.e., ever-present mindfulness, watchfulness,
or earnestness in doing good.
The ethical essence of Buddhism may be
summed up by this word—appamāda. The
last words of the Buddha were—appamādena
sampādetha — strive on with diligence.

2. Amata — Nibbāna, the ultimate goal of
Buddhists. As this positive term clearly
indicates, Nibbāna is not annihilation or
a state of nothingness as some are apt to
believe. It is the permanent, immortal,
supramundane state which cannot be expressed by mundane terms.

3. This should not be understood to mean that they are immortal. No being is immortal, not even Buddhhas or Arahants. The idea implied herein is that the heedful, who realize Nibbāna, are not reborn, and so do not die. The heedless are regarded as dead because they are not intent on doing good, and are subject to repeated births and deaths.

4. Knowing well that there is emancipation for the heedful, but not for the heedless.

5. Here Ariyas mean the pure ones like the Buddhhas and Arahants. The realm of the Ariyas means the thirty-seven factors of Enlightenment (Bodhipakkhiyadhamma) and the nine supramundane states. See notes on v. 44 and v. 115.

6. Here meditation includes both concentration (samatha) and contemplation or insight (vipassanā).

7. Yogakkhema — free from the four bonds of sense-desires (kāma), craving for existence (bhava), false views (diṭṭhi), and ignorance (avijjā).

8. Nibbāna = ni + vāna, lit., departure from craving. It is a supramundane state that can be attained in this life itself. It is also explained as extinction of passions, but not a state of nothingness. It is an eternal blissful state of relief that results from the complete eradication of the passions.
Metaphysically Nibbāna is the extinction of suffering; psychologically it is the elimination of egoism; ethically it is the eradication of lust, hatred and ignorance.

4. Uṭṭhānavato satimato
   suci kammassā ni samma kārino
   Saññatassa ca dhammajīvino
   appamattassa yaso'bhivaṭṭhati. 24.

THE ENERGETIC PROSPER

4. The glory of him who is energetic, mindful, pure in deed, considerate, self-controlled, right-living, and heedful steadily increases. 24.

Story

A rich but humble young man who pretended to be very poor, living like a labourer, was later elevated to a high position by the king. When he was introduced to the Buddha by the king He described the characteristics of those who prosper.

5. Uṭṭhānenappamādena
   saññamena damena ca
   Dipam kayirāha medhāvi
   yam ogho n'ābhikīrati. 25.
HEEDFULNESS

BY THEIR EFFORTS THE WISE CREATE THEIR OWN HEAVENS

5. By sustained effort, earnestness, discipline, and self-control let the wise man make for himself an island, which no flood overwhelms.

Story

A young monk, named Cūlapanthaka, could not memorize a verse of four lines despite trying for four months and he was advised by his brother monk to leave the Order. But he was reluctant to do so. The Buddha, understanding his temperament, gave him a clean piece of cloth and asked him to handle it gazing at the morning sun. By his constant handling of it with his sweating hands it soon got soiled. This perceptible change made him reflect on the impermanence of life. He meditated and attained Arahantship.

1. An island situated on a higher level cannot be flooded although the surrounding lowlying land may be inundated. Such an island becomes a refuge to all. In the same way the wise man who develops insight should make an island of himself by attaining Arahantship so that he may not be drowned by the four floods of sense-desires (kāma), false beliefs (dīssthī), craving for existence (bhava) and ignorance (avijjā).
APPAMĀDA VAGGA

6. Pamādamānuyuñjanti —
   bālā dummēdhino janā
   Appamādaṁ a medhāvi —
   ananam sethamva rakkhati. 26.

7. Mā pamādamānuyuñjetha —
   mā kāmaratisanthavāṁ
   Appamatto hi jhāyanto —
   pappoti vipulam sukhāṁ. 27.

BE HEEDFUL NOT HEEDLESS

5. The ignorant, foolish folk indulge in heedlessness; the wise man guards earnestness as the greatest treasure. 26.

7. Indulge not in heedlessness; have no intimacy with sensuous delights. Verily, the earnest, meditative person obtains abundant bliss. 27.

Story

At a certain period of the year in India it was the custom of some people to indulge in harsh speech for fun for seven days irrespective of persons. During that time the Buddha and His disciples confine themselves to the monastery. At the close of the period the devotees brought alms to the Buddha and His disciples and remarked that the Buddha must have had an unpleasant time. The Buddha replied that despite such foolish acts the wise ever live heedfully.
HEEDFULNESS

8. *Pamādām appamādēna* — *yadā nudati paṇḍito*

*Paṅāpāsādamārūyha* — *asoko sokiniṁ paṁāṁ*

*Pabbataṭṭho'va bhummaṭṭhe* — *dhūro bāle avekkhāti.*  28.

HEEDLESSNESS SHOULD BE CONQUERED
BY HEEDFULNESS

8. When an understanding one discards heedlessness by heedfulness, he, free from sorrow, ascends to the palace of wisdom and surveys the sorrowing folk as a wise mountaineer surveys the ignorant groundlings.¹  28.

Story

The Venerable Mahā Kassapa once endeavoured to comprehend by his supernormal vision the birth and death of beings. The Buddha appeared before him and said that it was only a Buddha who could comprehend the totality of existences.

¹. The sorrowless Arahants look compassionately with their Divine Eye upon the ignorant folk, who, being subject to repeated births, are not free from sorrow.
9. Appamatto pamattesu —
    suttesu bahujāgaro
Abalassam'va sīghasso —
    hitvā yāti sumedhast. 29.

THE STRENuous AND THE ALERT
OVERTAKE THE THOUGHTLESS AND
THE INDOLENT

9. Heedful amongst the heedless, wide awake
amongst the slumbering, the wise man advances as
does a swift horse, leaving a weak jade behind. 29.

Story

Two monks retired to a forest to meditate. One
was strenuous, the other was not. The Buddha
praised the former.

10. Appamādena Maghavā —
    devānam setṭhatam gato
Appamādaṁ pasamsanti —
    pamādo garahito sadā. 30.

EARNESTNESS LEADS TO SOVEREIGNTY

10. By earnestness Maghavā¹ rose to the lord-
ship of the gods.² Earnestness is ever praised;
negligence is ever despised.
HEEDFULNESS

Story

By his personal efforts and selfless service an ordinary person became after death the king of the gods.

1. *Maghavā* is synonymous with Sakka, king of the gods. The Maghamānavaka Jātaka relates that in the remote past a public-spirited person, who had spent his whole lifetime in welfare work with the cooperation of his friends, was born as Sakka as the result of his good actions.

2. *Devas*, lit., sporting or shining ones, are a class of beings with subtle physical bodies invisible to the naked eye. They live in the celestial planes. There are also earth-bound deities.

II. *Appamādarato bhikkhu* —

    *pamāde bhayadassi vā*

*Saññojanam anum thūlām —

    ḍaham aggī'va gacchati.* 31

---

THE HEEDFUL ADVANCE

II. The Bhikkhu¹ who delights in heedfulness, and looks with fear on heedlessness, advances like fire, burning all fetters² great and small. 31
Story

A monk, failing in his meditation in the forest, was coming to see the Buddha. On the way he saw a forest fire advancing, burning all things great and small. This sight induced him to think that he too should advance burning all the fetters, great and small, by the fire of the Noble Eightfold Path. The Buddha read his thought and, radiating a ray of light, advised him accordingly.

1. A fully ordained disciple of the Buddha is called a Bhikkhu. “Mendicant monk” may be suggested as the closest equivalent for “Bhikkhu”. He is not a priest as he is no mediator between God and man. He has no vows for life, but he is bound by his rules which he takes of his own accord. He leads a life of voluntary poverty and celibacy. If he is unable to live the Holy Life, he can discard the robe at any time.

2. Sāmyojana—lit., that which yokes beings to the ocean of life. There are ten kinds of fetters—namely, self-illusion (sakkāyadiṭṭhi), doubts (vicikicchā), indulgence in (wrongful) rites and ceremonies (siḷabbata-parāmāsa), sense-desires (kāmarāga), hatred (paṭigha), attachment to the Realms of Form (rūparāga), attachment to the Formless Realms (arūparāga), conceit (māna), restlessness (uddhacca) and ignorance (avijjā).
The first five, pertaining to This Shore (oram-bhāgiya) are regarded as small, the rest, pertaining to the Further Shore (uddhambhāgiya) as great.

The first three are eradicated on attaining the first Stage of Sainthood (Sotāpatti).

The second two are attenuated on attaining the second stage of Sainthood (Sakadāgāmi).

The second two are destroyed on attaining the third stage of Sainthood (Anāgāmi).

The last five are eradicated on attaining the fourth stage of Sainthood (Arahatta).

12. Appamādarato bhikkhu —
   pāmāde bhayadassi vā
Abhabo parihānāya —
nibbānass'eva santike.  

---

THE HEEDFUL ARE IN THE PRESENCE OF NIBBĀNA

12. The Bhikkhu who delights in heedfulness, and looks with fear on heedlessness, is not liable to fall.¹ He is in the presence of Nibbāna.  

---

¹
Story

A monk was frugal and contented. The Buddha attributed those characteristics to the monk’s close association with Him in the past and remarked that monks of his type were already in the presence of Nibbāna.

1. From his spiritual heights which he has attained.
Chapter 3

CITTA VAGGA
MIND

1. Phandanaṁ capalāṁ cittaṁ —
   durakkhaṁ dunnivārayaṁ
   Ujjum karoti medhāvi —
   usukāro' va tejanam. 33.

2. Vārio'va thale khitto —
   okamokata ubbhato
   Pariphandati'midāṁ cittaṁ —
   Māradheyyāṁ pahātave. 34.

STRAIGHTEN YOUR FICKLE MIND

1. The flickering, fickle mind,\(^1\) difficult to guard, difficult to control — the wise person straightens it as a fletcher straightens an arrow. 33.

2. Like a fish that is drawn from its watery abode and thrown upon land, even so does this mind flutter. Hence should the realm of the passions be shunned.\(^2\) 34.

35
CITTA VAGGA

Ch. 3

Story

A monk was overcome by evil thoughts. The Buddha admonished him to subdue his mind.

1. *Citta* is derived from the root *cit*, to think. The traditional interpretation of the term is “that which is aware of an object” (*cinteti = vi-jānāti*). Actually it is not that which thinks of an object as the term implies. If it could be said “it thinks” as one says in English “it rains”, it would be more in consonance with the Buddha’s teaching. From an ultimate standpoint *citta* may be defined as the awareness of an object, since Buddhism denies a subjective agent like a soul. According to Buddhism no distinction is made between mind and consciousness, terms which are used as equivalents for *citta*.

2. *Pahātave* is used in the sense of *pahātabba* = should be shunned.

3. *Dunniggahassa lahuno — yattha kāmanipātino*

*Cittassa damatho sādhu — cittaṁ dantam sukhaṁvaham.* 35.

---

CONTROL YOUR MIND

3. The mind is hard to check, swift, flits wherever it listeth : to control it is good. A controlled mind is conducive to happiness. 35.
MIND

Story

A devout woman, receiving instruction from the monks, attained Anāgāmi, the third stage of Sainthood, with supernormal powers such as reading others’ thoughts, even before the monks had gained their Deliverance. Understanding the physical needs of the monks, she ministered to them well. Before long they too attained Arahantship. An avaricious monk, hearing of her powers, visited the place. She did everything he desired. The monk, fearing that evil thoughts might arise in him, went to the Buddha and reported the matter. The Buddha advised him to subdue his uncontrollable mind.

4. Sududdasāṁ sunipuṇāṁ —
   yatthakāmanipātināṁ
Cittam rakkhetā medhāvī —
cittam guttam sukhāvahām. 36.

GUARD YOUR THOUGHTS

4. The mind is very hard to perceive, extremely subtle, flits wherever it listeth. Let the wise person guard it; a guarded mind is conducive to happiness. 36.
Story

A devout follower entered the Order, but soon found the Holy Life too embarrassing, owing to the large number of obligatory rules. The Buddha advised him not to worry about them but to guard only his thoughts.

5. Dūraṅgamaṁ ekacaram —
    asarīram guhāsayam
Ye cittaṁ saññamessanti —
mokkhati mārabandhanā. 37.

FREE ARE THEY WHO HAVE CONTROLLED THEIR MINDS

5. Faring far, wandering alone,¹ bodiless,² lying in a cave,³ is the mind. Those who subdue it are freed from the bond of Māra. 37.

Story

An uncle and nephew were leading the Holy Life. One day the nephew received two pieces of cloth and he presented one to his uncle but he declined the offer. He was displeased and planned to leave the Order while fanning his uncle. He thought that he would sell one piece of cloth and
buy a she-goat and earn some money. Eventually he would get married and would have a son. Then he would pay a visit to his uncle with his wife and child. On the way his wife would accidentally kill his child and he would get angry and beat his wife. Day dreaming thus, he struck his uncle with the fan. The uncle read his thoughts and brought him to his senses. The nephew felt ashamed, dropped the fan, and ran away. The monks seized him and brought him to the Buddha's presence. The Buddha described the fleeting nature of the mind.

1. Because no two thought moments arise at a particular time.

2. The imperceptible mind is immaterial and colourless.

3. Guhāsayam — i.e., the seat of consciousness.

It is clear that the Buddha had not definitely assigned a specific basis for consciousness as He had done with the other senses. It was the cardiac theory (the theory that the heart is the seat of consciousness) that prevailed in His time, and this was evidently supported by the Upanishads. The Buddha could have adopted this popular theory, but He did not commit Himself. In the Patthāna, the Book of Relations, the Buddha refers to the
basis of consciousness in such indirect terms as *yam rūpam nissāya*, dependent on that material thing. What the material thing was the Buddha did not positively assert. According to the views of commentators like the Venerables Buddhaghosa and Anuruddha the seat of consciousness is the heart (*hadayavatthu*).

One wonders whether one is justified in presenting the cardiac theory as Buddhistic when the Buddha Himself neither rejected nor accepted this popular theory.

---

6. *Anavaṭṭhita*cittassa —
   *saddhammaṁ avijānato*

   *Pariplavapasādassa* —
   *pañña na paripūrati.* 38.

7. *Anavassutacittassa* —
   *anavāhatacetaso*

   *Puññapāpāpahīnassas* —
   *natthi jāgarato bhayaṁ.* 39.

---

**TO THE VIGILANT THERE IS NO FEAR**

6. He whose mind is not steadfast, he who knows not the true doctrine, he whose confidence wavers — the wisdom of such a one will never be perfect.
MIND

7. He whose mind is not soaked (by lust), he who is not affected (by hatred), he who has transcended both good and evil\(^2\) — for such a vigilant\(^3\) one there is no fear.

Story

A farmer entered the Order thinking to lead an easy life. Six times he discarded the robe and each time he re-entered the Order. Once seeing his pregnant wife in disarray, he was disgusted of worldly life. On the way to the monastery he meditated and became a Stream-Winner (Sotāpanna) and entreated the unwilling monks to reordain him. He received his ordination and, before long, attained Arhatship. When the monks mentioned to the Buddha that he claimed Arhatship the Buddha explained his state of mind before and after his realization of Nibbāna.

---

1. Namely, spiritual wisdom or insight.
2. The deeds of an Arhat, a perfect Saint, are neither good nor bad because he has gone beyond both good and evil. This does not mean that he is passive. He is active but his activity is selfless and is directed to help others to tread the path he has trod himself. His deeds, ordinarily accepted as good, lack creative power as regards himself in producing Kammic effects. He is not however
exempt from the effects of his past actions. He accumulates no fresh kammic activities. Whatever actions he does, as an Arahant, are termed “inoperative” (kiriya), and are not regarded as Kamma. They are ethically ineffective. Understanding things as they truly are, he has finally shattered the cosmic chain of cause and effect.

3. It should not erroneously be understood that Arahants do not sleep. Whether asleep or awake they are regarded as sleepless or vigilant ones, since the five stimulating virtues — namely, confidence (saddhā), energy (viriya), mindfulness (sati), concentration (samādhi), and wisdom (pañña) are ever present in them.

8. Kumbhūpamaṁ kāyamimāṁ viditvā —
nagarūpamaṁ cittamidam ṭhapetvā
Yodetha māram paññāyudhena —
jitaṁ ca rakkhe anivesano siyā. 40.

FORTIFY YOUR MIND AND BE NON-ATTACHED

8. Realizing that this body is (as fragile) as a jar, establishing this mind (as firm) as a (fortified) city, he should attack Mara4 with the weapon of wisdom. He should guard his conquest4 and be without attachment.5
Story

Many monks who were meditating in a forest were troubled by the tree-deities. When they sought the advice of the Buddha they were advised to extend their loving-kindness towards them all. They did so with the result that those very deities later proved very helpful to them. Comparing the body to a vessel, the monks developed insight. The Buddha read their thoughts and projecting Himself before them confirmed what they thought.

1. The passions.
2. By conquest is here meant the newly developed insight (vipassanā).
3. For the Jhānas (absorptions or ecstasies) which the aspirant has developed. The Jhānas are highly developed mental states obtained by intensified concentration.

9. Acirām vat'ayam kāyo — paṭhavīṁ adhisessati
   Chuddho apetaviṁñaṇo — nirattham'va kaśingaram.

9. Before long, alas! this body will lie upon the ground, cast aside, devoid of consciousness, even as a useless charred log.¹
Story

The Buddha ministered to a sick monk, deserted by his cocelebates. He himself washed his stinking body with warm water. Then He sat on his bed and preached to him on the fleeting nature of the body.

1. Kalingaram, a rotten log which cannot be used for any purpose.

10. Diso disamaṃ yam tam kayirā—
     verī vā āṇa verīnam
     Miccaṇāniḥitām cittām—
     pāpiyo nām tato kare. 42.

AN ILL-DISPOSED MIND IS THE GREATEST ENEMY

10. Whatever (harm) a foe may do to a foe, or a hater to a hater, an ill-directed mind\(^1\) can do one far greater (harm).

Story

A wealthy herdsman entertained the Buddha. When the Buddha departed he accompanied Him for some distance and turned back. As he was returning he was accidentally killed by a stray
MIND

arrow. The monks remarked that if the Buddha had not visited that place, the man would not have met with that fatal accident. The Buddha replied that under no circumstances would he have escaped his death owing to a past evil Kamma and added that the internal ill-directed mind would become very inimical to oneself.

1. That is, the mind directed towards the ten kinds of evil — namely, 1. killing, 2. stealing, 3. sexual misconduct, 4. lying, 5. slandering, 6. harsh speech, 7. vain talk, 8. covetousness, 9. ill-will, and 10. false belief.

II. Na tam mātā pitā kayirā —
   aññe vā pi ca ṇātakā
Sammā panihitam cittam —
   seyyaso nam tato kare.
   43.

A WELL-DIRECTED MIND IS FAR GREATER THAN EVEN A MOTHER OR A FATHER

11. What neither mother, nor father, nor any other relative can do, a well-directed mind does and thereby elevates one.
   43.
Story

Once a wealthy person harboured a lustful thought on seeing an Arahant. Subsequently he controlled his passion and entered the Order. Before long he attained Arahantship. Hearing of his transformation and attainment, the Buddha praised him and added that a well-directed mind could bestow great blessings such as would not be within the power of even a mother or a father to confer.

1. That is, the mind directed towards the ten kinds of meritorious deeds (kusala) — namely, 1. generosity, 2. morality, 3. meditation, 4. reverence, 5. service, 6. transference of merit, 7. rejoicing in others’ merit, 8. hearing the doctrine, 9. expounding the doctrine, and 10. straightening one’s right views.
Chapter 4

PUPPHA VAGGA
FLOWERS

1. Ko imaṁ paṭhavim vijessati —
yamarokaṁ ca imaṁ sadavakaṁ
Ko dhammapadam sudesitam —
kusalo pūppham'iva paccasati. 44.

2. Sekho paṭhavim vijessati —
yamarokaṁ ca imaṁ sadavakaṁ
Sekho dhammapadam sudesitam —
kusalo pūppham' iva paccasati. 45.

---

THE NOBLE DISCIPLE WILL CONQUER THIS SELF

1. Who will comprehend¹ this earth (self),² and this realm of Yama,³ and this world⁴ together with the devas⁵ Who will investigate the well-taught Path of Virtue,⁶ even as an expert (garland-maker) will pick flowers? 44.
2. A disciple in training (sekha), will comprehend this earth, and this realm of Yama together with the realm of the devas. A disciple in training will investigate the well-taught Path of Virtue, even as an expert (garland-maker) will pick flowers.

Story

On hearing that His monks were discussing the extent of the earth, the Buddha advised them to meditate on the personal earth-element.

1. Vijessati = attano ṇāṭiga vijānissati = who will know by one's own wisdom? (Commentary).

2. That is, one who will understand oneself as one really is.

3. By the realm of Yama are meant the four woe-ful states — namely, hell, the animal kingdom, the Peta Realm, and the Asura Realm. Hell is not permanent according to Buddhism. It is a state of misery as are the other planes where beings suffer for their past evil actions.

4. Namely, the human plane and the six celestial planes. These seven are regarded as blissful states (sugati).

5. Devas, lit., sporting or shining ones. They are also a class of beings who enjoy themselves, experiencing the effects of their past good actions. They too are subject to death.
6. *Dhammapāda*. The commentary states that this term is applied to the thirty-seven Factors of Enlightenment (*Bodhipakkhiyadhamma*). They are:—

I.— The four Foundations of Mindfulness (*Satipaṭṭhāna*)—namely, 1. contemplation of the body (*kāyānupassanā*), 2. contemplation of the feelings (*vedanānupassanā*), 3. contemplation of thoughts (*cittānupassanā*), and 4. contemplation of phenomena (*dhammānupassanā*).

II.— The four Supreme Efforts (*Sammappaṭṭhāna*)—namely, 1. the effort to prevent evil that has not arisen, 2. the effort to discard evil that has already arisen, 3. the effort to cultivate unarisen good, and 4. the effort to promote good that has already arisen.

III.— The four Means of Accomplishment (*Iddhipāda*)—namely, will (*chanda*), energy (*viriya*), thought (*citta*), and wisdom (*vimamsa*).

IV.— The five Faculties (*Indriya*)—namely, confidence (*saddhā*), energy (*viriya*), mindfulness (*sati*), concentration (*samādhi*), and wisdom (*paññā*).

V.— The five Forces (*Bala*), having the same names as the *Indriyas*.

VI.— The seven Constituents of Enlightenment (*Bojjhaṅga*)—namely, mindfulness (*sati*), investigation of the Truth (*Dhammavicaya*), energy (*viriya*), joy (*pīti*), serenity (*passaddhi*), concentration (*samādhi*), and equanimity (*upekkhā*).
VII.— The Eightfold Path (Atthangikamagga) —namely, right views (samma diṭṭhi), right thoughts (samma samkappā), right speech, (samma vācā), right actions (samma kamman-ta) right livelihood (samma ājīva), right endeavour (samma vāyāma), right mindfulness (samma sati) and right concentration (samma samādhi).

7. The term sekha, lit., one who is still undergoing training, is applied to a disciple who has attained the first stage of Sainthood (Sotāpatti = Stream-winner) until he attains the final Arahatta fruit stage. When he totally eradicates all fetters (sāmyo-jana) and attains the fruit stage of an Arahant, he is called an Asekha, as he has perfected his training.

It is an asekha disciple who understands himself and the whole world as they really are. There is no graceful English equivalent for this difficult Pali term.

"Adept" (= one who has attained) may be suggested as the closest rendering.

3. Pheṇūpamān kāyamimāṃ viditvā —
   maricidhammān abhisambudhāno
   Chetvāna mārassa papupphakāni —
   adassanām maccūrājassa gacche.  46.

60
LIKE A MIRAGE IS THIS BODY

3. Knowing that this body is like foam,¹ and comprehending its mirage-nature,² one should destroy the flower-shafts of sensual passions (Māra), and pass beyond the sight of the king of death.³

Story

The sight of a mirage and bubbles of foam induced a monk to meditate on the impermanence and non-substantiality of life. The Buddha read his thoughts and, appearing before him, confirmed his views.

1. Owing to its fleeting nature.
2. Because there is nothing substantial in this body.
3. Namely, life’s sorrow, born of passions. An Arahant destroys all passions by his wisdom and attains Nibbāna where there is no death.

4. Pupphāni h'eva pacinantam —
   byāsattamanasam naram
   Suttam gāmam mahogho’va —
   maccu ādāya gacchati. ⁴⁷

DEATH TAKES THE SENSUAL UNAWARES

4. The man who gathers flowers (of sensual pleasure), whose mind is distracted, death carries off as a great flood sweeps away a sleeping village.
Story

Provoked by a disparaging remark, king Vīḍūdabha wreaked vengeance on the Sakyas, kinsmen of the Buddha, by killing them wholesale. On his return journey he camped with his followers on the bed of a river. At night an unexpected flood swept them all to the sea. Hearing of their tragic end, the Buddha remarked that people come to ruin without accomplishing their objects.

5. Pupphāni h'eva pacinantam —
byāsattamanasam naram
Atittām yeva kāmesu —
antako kurute vasam.

WITH UNGRATIFIED DESIRES
THE SENSUAL DIE

5. The man who gathers flowers (of sensual pleasure), whose mind is distracted, and who is insatiate in desires, the Destroyer brings under his sway.

Story

A woman offered alms to the monks in the morning and died in the evening of that very day. When this pathetic incident was reported to the Buddha He spoke on the fleeting nature of life
FLOWERS

and added that men succumb to death with insatiate desires.


6. *Yathā’pi bhamaro pūppham* —
   *vannagandham ahethayanī*
   *Paleti rasam’ādāya* —
   *evam gāme munī care.*

SAINTLY MONKS CAUSE NO INCONVENIENCE TO ANY

6. As a bee without harming the flower, its colour or scent, flies away, collecting only the honey, even so should the sage wander in the village.¹

Story

The Venerable Moggallāṇa, exercising his psychic powers, brought a niggardly treasurer and his wife to the presence of the Buddha. Hearing the doctrine, they became converts. When the monks extolled the virtues of the Venerable Moggallāṇa the Buddha remarked that good monks like the Venerable Moggallāṇa should induce people to repose confidence in the Teacher, causing no inconvenience to any.
1. Seeking alms, without inconveniencing any.

7. Na paresam vilomāni —
  na paresam katākatam
Attano'va avekkheyya —
  katāni akatāni ca.

SECK NOT OTHERS' FAULTS BUT YOUR OWN

7. Let not one seek others' faults, things left done and undone by others, but one's own deeds done and undone.

Story

A naked ascetic, through jealousy, prevented a female follower of his from listening to the Teaching of the Buddha. She, however, invited the Buddha to her house through her son. When she was hearing the Dhamma from the Buddha the ascetic suddenly appeared on the scene and abused her and the Buddha. As the woman was perturbed in mind at this sudden outburst the Buddha advised her not to seek the faults of others but her own.

8. Yathā'pi ruciram puppham —
  vannavantam agandhakaṃ
Evam subhāsitā vācā —
  aphalā hoti akubbato.

51.
FLOWERS

9. Yathā'pi rucirāṁ pupphāṁ —
   vannavantāṁ sagandhakāṁ
   Evasī subhāśītā vācā —
   saphalā hoti sakubbato. 52.

——

PRACTICE IS BETTER THEN MERE TEACHING

8. As a flower that is lovely and beautiful but is scentless, even so fruitless is the well-spoken word of one who does not practise it. 51.

9. As a flower that is lovely, beautiful, and scent-laden, even so fruitful is the well-spoken word of one who practises it. 52.

——

Story

Two ladies of the court studied the Dhamma under the Venerable Ānanda. One studied well, but the other made little progress. The Buddha declared that like a scentless flower, fruitless becomes the Dhamma to the person who makes no effort to study it well.

——

10. Yathā'pi puppharāsimhā —
    kayirā mālāguṇe bahū
    Evasī jātena maccena —
    kattabbaṁ kusalam bahum. 53.
DO MUCH GOOD

10. As from a heap of flowers many a garland is made, even so many good deeds should be done by one born a mortal.

Story

Visākhā, the chief benefactress of the Buddha, erected a monastery at great expense. So great was her delight that, with her children and grandchildren, she went round the monastery singing paeans of joy. When this was reported to the Buddha He remarked that Visākhā was doing so as she had fulfilled a past aspiration of hers and added that much merit should be done by all.

11. Na pupphagandho paṭivātam eti —
    na candanaṁ tagaramallikā vā
Sataṁ ca gandho paṭivātam eti —
    sabbā disā sappuriso pavāti.

12. Candanaṁ tagaram vā’pi
    uppalam atha vassikī
eTesam gandhajātānam
    sīlagandho anuttaro.

MORAL FRAGRANCE WAFTS EVERYWHERE

11. The perfume of flowers blows not against the wind, nor does the fragrance of sandalwood,
FLOWERS

tagara¹ and jasmine, but the fragrance of the virtuous blows against the wind; the virtuous man pervades every direction.

12. Sandalwood, tagara, lotus, jasmine: above all these kinds of fragrance, the perfume of virtue is by far the best.

Story

The Venerable Ānanda wished to know whether there was any fragrance that wafted equally with and against the wind. The Buddha replied that the fragrance of virtue wafts in all directions.

1. A kind of shrub from which a fragrant powder is obtained.

13. Appamatto ayam gandho —
yā'yam tagaracandani
Yo ca silavatam gandho —
vāti devesu uttamo.

THE SCENT OF VIRTUE IS BY FAR THE BEST

13. Of little account is the fragrance of tagara or sandal; the fragrance of the virtuous, which blows even amongst the gods, is supreme.
Story

Sakka, king of the gods, disguised as a poor weaver, offered alms to the Venerable Kassapa, who had been looking for a poor person to whom he might give the privilege of giving him alms. The Buddha stated that Sakka, attracted by the perfume of virtue of the Venerable Kassapa, gave him alms.

14. Tesaṁ sampāṇnasilānām —
   appamādavihārinām
Sammadāññāvīmuttānām —
   māro maggam na vindati.

REBIRTH-CONSCIOUSNESS OF ARAHANTS
CANNOT BE TRACED

14. Māra finds not the path of those who are virtuous, careful in living, and freed by right knowledge.

Story

The Venerable Godhika, impeded by a certain disease, cut his throat with a razor; but immediately before his death cultivated insight and realized Nibbāna. The Evil One was searching for his rebirth-consciousness. The Buddha remarked that the Evil One cannot trace the rebirth-consciousness of an Arahant.
1. The personification of evil. See note on V. 8.

15. Yathā saṅkāradhānasmin —
  ujjhitasmim mahāpathe
  Padumam' tattha jāyetha —
  sucigandhami manoramanī 58.

16. Evam saṅkārabhūtesu —
   andhabhūte puthujjane
  Atirocati paññāya —
   sammāsambuddhasāvako. 59.

GREATNESS MAY BE FOUND EVEN
AMONGST THE BASEST
THE WISE OUTSHINE WORLDLINGS

15-16. As upon a heap of rubbish thrown on the highway, a sweet-smelling, lovely lotus may grow, even so amongst worthless beings, a disciple of the Fully Enlightened One outshines the blind worldlings in wisdom.¹ 58-59.

Story

A devotee of an alien sect devised a means to humiliate the Buddha and His disciples. The Buddha discovered it and succeeded in converting him to His Teaching. Due to lack of wisdom, the Buddha remarked, some could not
realize the goodness of His disciples and He compared the ignorant to the blind and the wise to those who have eyes.

1. Nobody is condemned in Buddhism, for greatness is latent even in the seemingly lowliest just as lotuses spring from muddy ponds.
Chapter 5

BĀLA VAGGA
FOOLS

1. Dīghā jāgarato ratti —
   dīgham santassa yojanam
Dīgho bālānam samsāro —
   saddhammam avijānatam. 60.

LONG IS SAMSĀRA TO THOSE WHO
KNOW NOT THE DHAMMA

1. Long is the night to the wakeful; long is
   the league to the weary; long is samsāra¹ to the
   foolish who know not the Sublime Truth. 60.

Story

King Pasenadi once came to the Buddha and
said that he felt that a particular night was too
long. Another person remarked that on the
previous day he felt that the league was too long.
The Buddha summed up by adding that Samsāra
is long to those who are ignorant of the Dhamma.
1. Lit., wandering again and again. It is the ocean of life or existence. 
_Saṁsāra_ is defined as the unbroken flow of the stream of aggregates, elements, and sense-faculties. 
_Saṁsāra_ is also explained as the “continued flow of the stream of being from life to life, from existence to existence”.

2. _Carāṇī ce naṁdhi-gaccheyya —_
   _seyyaṁ sadisam attano_
_Ekacariyam dālamī kayirā —_
   _naitthi bāle sahaẏatā._

### AVOID COMPANIONSHIP WITH THE FOOLISH

2. If, as the disciple fares along, he meets no companion who is better or equal, let him firmly pursue his solitary career. There is no fellowship with the foolish.

---

**Story**

A teacher reproached his pupil for some misdemeanour. The displeased pupil set fire to the teacher’s hut and fled. The Buddha, hearing of the incident, commended a solitary career in preference to companionship with the foolish.

---

1. _Sahaẏatā_, According to the commentary this term connotes higher morality, insight, _Paths,_
and Fruits of Sainthood. No such virtues are found in the foolish.

2. Out of compassion, to work for their betterment, one may associate with the foolish but not be contaminated by them.

3. *Puttā m'atthi dhanam m'atthi ' — iti bālo vihaññati
   attā hi attano natthi —
   kuto puttā kuto dhanam.* 62.

---

ONE IS NOT ONE'S OWN

3. "Sons have I; wealth have I": Thus is the fool worried. Verily, he himself is not his own. Whence sons? Whence wealth? 62.

---

Story

A wealthy but miserly person was reborn as a hideous-looking beggar. One day it so happened that he entered the house where he had dwelt in his previous life but he was bundled out and was thrown into a rubbish-heap. The Buddha, who was passing that way, noticed him and told the man’s son that the beggar was none other than his own dead father.

4. *Yo bālo maññati bālyam —
   pāṇḍito vā'pi tena so
   Bālo ca pāṇḍitamāni —
   sa ve bālo’ti vuccati.* 63.
WISE IS HE WHO ACKNOWLEDGES
HIS FOOLISHNESS

4. The fool who knows that he is a fool is for
that very reason a wise man; the fool who thinks
that he is wise is called a fool indeed.

Story

Two persons went to hear the Dhamma. One
attained the first stage of Sainthood, the other
stole some money. On returning home the latter
taunted the former as a fool not to have availed
himself of the opportunity to steal something as
he had done. When the matter was reported to
the Buddha He explained the difference between a
fool and a wise man.

5. Yāvajīvam'pi ce bālo —
  pāṇḍitam pāyirupāsati
Na so dhammaṁ vijānāti —
  dabbi sūparasam yathā.

A FOOL CANNOT APPRECIATE THE
VALUE OF THE DHAMMA

5. Though a fool, through all his life, asso-
ciates with a wise man, he no more understands
the Dhamma than a spoon (tastes) the flavour
of soup.
Story

Mistaking the Venerable Udāyi, who used to sit in the seat of Dhamma, for a skilled exponent of the Dhamma, the monks questioned him about the teaching. Discovering his ignorance, they reported the matter to the Buddha, who then explained the attitude of a fool towards the Dhamma.

6. Muhuttam api ce viññū —
   pāṇḍitaṁ paṁpirūpāsati
Khippari dhammaṁ viññāti —
   jivhā suparasam yathā. 65.

THE WISE CAN APPRECIATE THE VALUE OF THE DHAMMA

6. Though an intelligent person, associates with a wise man for only a moment, he quickly understands the Dhamma as the tongue (tastes) the flavour of soup. 65.

Story

Thirty youths listened to the Dhamma and instantly attained Arahatship. The Buddha commented on their quick realization owing to their high intelligence.

7. Caranti bālā dummedhā —
   amitten' eva attañā
Karontā pāpakāṁ kammaṁ —
   yam hoti katukappalam. 66.
Bitter is the Fruit of Evil

7. Fools of little wit move about with the very self as their own foe, doing evil deeds the fruit of which is bitter.

Story

One day a leper heard the Dhamma and became a Sotāpanna (Stream-winner). Unfortunately as he was returning a heifer attacked and killed him. The Buddha explained that he became a leper because in a past life he had spat at a Private Buddha and was killed because he had killed a courtezan.

8. Na tam kammaṁ katam sādhu — yam katvā anutappati
   Yassa assumukho rodam —
   vipākam paṭisevati.

Not Well Done is That Deed Which Causes Repentance

8. That deed is not well done when, after having done it, one repents, and when weeping, with tearful face, one reaps the fruit thereof.

Story

A farmer was accused of theft for keeping in his possession some stolen property. Owing to his
peculiar behaviour he was produced before the Buddha, who then explained the actual circumstances of the case. When the poor man was released because of his innocence the Buddha stated the consequences of evil deeds.

9. Tañ ca kammaṁ kataṁ sādhu —
   yam katvā nānutaṭpati
Yassa patīto sumano —
   vipākaṁ paṭisevati. 68.

WELL DONE IS THAT DEED WHICH CAUSES NO REPENTANCE

9. That deed is well done when, after having done it, one repents not, and when, with joy and pleasure, one reaps the fruit thereof. 68.

Story

A gardener, risking his life, offered to the Buddha some jasmine flowers which were meant for the king. Contrary to his expectations, the king was pleased with his meritorious act and rewarded him suitably. The Buddha thereupon commented on the effects of good deeds.

10. Madhū'vaṁ maññati bālo —
    yāva pāpaṁ na paccati
Yadā ca paccatī pāpaṁ —
    atha bālo dukkham nigacchati. 69.
BĀLA VAGGA

EVIL-DOERS COME TO GRIEF

10. As sweet as honey is an evil deed, so thinks the fool so long as it ripens not; but when it ripens, then he comes to grief. 69.

Story

A former suitor of a nun ravished her while she was dwelling alone in a forest. On hearing of the incident, the Buddha commented on the sufferings that accrue to evil-doers.

1. Madhu vā — in most texts.

11. Māse māse kusaggena —
bālo bhuñjetha bhojanam
Na so saṅkhata dhammānām —
kalam agghati sojasīm 70.

REALIZATION IS FAR SUPERIOR TO MERE FASTING

11. Month after month a fool may eat only as much food as can be picked up on the tip of a kusa grass blade;¹ but he is not worth a sixteenth part of them who have comprehended the Truth.² 70.

Story

An ascetic, as the result of a past evil action, used to live on excreta. One day, with the tip of
FOOLS

a blade of grass, he placed on the tip of his tongue
a little butter and honey. The Buddha visited him
and made him attain Arahantship.

1. Literally, month after month, with a kusa
grass blade, a fool may eat his food.

2. Samkhata-dhammanam, “who have well
weighed the Law”, Max Müller and Burlingame.
“Who well have taken things into
account”, Mrs. Rhys Davids. “Who have stu-
died the Dhamma noble”, Woolward. The
commentarial explanation is: “The Ariyas who
have realized the four Noble Truths”.

The prolonged, so-called meritorious fasting
of alien ascetics who have not destroyed the
passions, is not worth the sixteenth part of a
solitary day’s fasting of an Ariya who has
realized the four Noble Truths.

12. Na hi pāpaṁ katam kammaṁ
sajju khīraṁ 'va muccati
Dahantam bālam anveti
bhammacchanno'va pāvako.

EVIL TAKES EFFECT AT THE
OPPORTUNE MOMENT

12. Verily, an evil deed committed does not
immediately bear fruit, just as milk curdles not at
once; smouldering, it follows the fool like fire
covered with ashes.
Story

An indignant farmer set fire to the hut of a Private Buddha and was born as a Peta resembling a snake. The Buddha related why he was born in such a state and commented on the effects of evil deeds.

13. Yāvadeva anatthāya
   ṇattam bālassa jāyati
   Hanti bālassa sukkāṁsaṁ
   muddham assa vipātayam. 72.

KNOWLEDGE AND FAME TEND TO THE RUIN OF FOOLS

13. To his ruin, indeed, the fool gains knowledge and fame; they destroy his bright lot and cleave his head.¹ 72.

Story

A vicious pupil learnt the art of shooting and misused his skill by shooting a stone at a Private Buddha and killing him instantaneously. In consequence of this evil deed he was born as a sledgehammer Peta. Referring to his past skill, the Buddha remarked that the knowledge of the vicious tends to their own ruin.

1. That is, his wisdom.
FOOLS

14. Asataṁ bhāvanam iccheyya
    āṅgavatāṁ ca bhikkhusu
   āvāsesu ca issariyam
   ṗūjā ṭhānāsīḷu ca.

15. Mām eva katha maññantu
    gihī pabbajitā ubho
    Mām evaṭivasā assu
    kiccākiccesu kismici
   Iti bālassa saṅkappo
    icchā mano ca vaḍḍhati.

THE IGNORANT SEEK UNDUE FAME

14. The fool will desire undue reputation, precedence among monks, authority in the monasteries, honour among other families.

15. Let both laymen and monks think, "by myself was this done; in every work, great or small, let them refer to me". Such is the ambition of the fool; his desires and pride increase.

Story

A resident monk, jealous of the honour paid to the visiting Chief Disciple by his supporters, insulted him and reported the matter to the Buddha. The Teacher advised the monk to seek his pardon and told him not to be egoistic and ambitious, thinking in terms of "me" and "mine".
16. Aññā hi lābhūparisā —
   aññā nibbānagāmini
   Evam etam abhiññāya —
   bhikkhu Buddhassa sāvako
   Sakkāram nābhinanandeyya —
   vivekam anubrūhaye.

THE PATH TO GAIN IS ONE AND TO NIBBĀNA IS ANOTHER

16. Surely, the path that leads to worldly gain is one, and the path that leads to Nibbāna is another; understanding this, the bhikkhu, the disciple of the Buddha, should not rejoice in worldly favours, but cultivate detachment. 1

Story

A novice who hailed from a respected family was showered with gifts, but he spurned them and lived a life of poverty in a forest and attained Arahantship. The bhikkhus spoke in praise of his exemplary conduct. The Buddha, hearing their talk, described the two different paths that lead to gain and Nibbāna.

1. Viveka, separation or detachment, is threefold, namely, bodily separation from the crowd (kāyaviveka), mental separation from passions (cittaviveka), and complete separation from all conditioned things which is Nibbāna (upadhi-viveka).
Chapter 6

PAÑḌITA VAGGA
THE WISE

1. Nidhīnaṁ va pavattāram —
   yam pāse vajjadassinam
Niggayhavādīṁ medhāvim —
   tādisaṁ pañḍitariṁ bhaje
Tādisaṁ bhajamānassa —
   seyyo hoti na pāpiyo.

ASSOCIATE WITH THE WISE WHO
TRY TO CORRECT YOU

1. Should one see a wise man, who, like a
reveal of treasure, points out faults and re-
proves; let one associate with such a wise person;
it will be better, not worse, for him who asso-
ciates with such a one.

Story

The Venerable Sāriputta admitted a poor man
into the Order as a mark of gratitude for a ladleful
of food offered to him. The new monk was extremely obedient to his teacher and was ever so eager to receive advice that before long he attained Arahantship. The Buddha commented on his readiness to accept advice and exhorted the monks to emulate him.

2. Ovadeyyānusāseyya —
   asābhā ca nivāraye
   Satam hi so pīyo hoti —
   asatam hoti appiyo. 77.

ADVISERS ARE PLEASING TO THE GOOD, BUT NOT TO THE BAD

2. Let him advise, instruct, and dissuade one from evil; truly pleasing is he to the good, displeasing is he to the bad. 77.

Story

The Buddha requested His two Chief Disciples to advise two unruly monks, remarking that advisers are not loved by the ill-disciplined.

3. Na bhaje pāpake mitte —
   na bhaje ṭarisādhamē
   Bhajetha mitte kalyāne —
   bhajetha ṭirisuttame. 78.

74
THE WISE

CULTIVATE GOOD FRIENDSHIP

3. Associate not with evil friends, associate not with mean men; associate with good friends, associate with noble men.

Story

The Venerable Channa, who was formerly the charioteer of Prince Siddhattha, was very obstinate and insolent. He used to rebuke the two Chief Disciples. Thrice the Buddha advised him and spoke on good friendship, remarking that the two Chief Disciples were his great friends.

4. Dhammapīti sukham seti —
vippasannena cetasā
Ariyappavedite dhamme —
sadā ramati paṇḍito.

HAPPILY HE LIVES WHO DRINKS
OF THE DHAMMA

4. He who imbibes the Dhamma abides in happiness with mind pacified; the wise man ever delights in the Dhamma revealed by the Ariya.¹

¹ Ariya, which means ‘one who is far removed from passions’, was originally a racial term. In Buddhism it indicates nobility of character, and is invariably applied to the Buddhas and the Arahants.
Story

A king entered the Order and, attaining Arahantship, was constantly saying, “oh happiness!” The monks misconstruing his joy, told the Buddha that he was evidently thinking of his erstwhile royal pleasures. The Buddha corrected them and said that he was mentally enjoying the bliss of Nibbāna.

5. Udākam hi nayanti nettikā —
usukārā namayanti tejanam
Dārum namayanti tacchakā —
atānam damayanti paṇḍitā. 80.

THE WISE CONTROL THEMSELVES

5. Irrigators lead the waters; fletchers bend the shafts; carpenters bend the wood; the wise control themselves. 80.

Story

A boy of seven years entered the Order. One day as the novice was accompanying his teacher on his alms rounds he noticed irrigators, fletchers, and carpenters at work and put many questions to his teacher. He thought to himself: if inanimate things could be so controlled, why could he not control his own mind? He retired to his cell, meditated, and attained Arahantship while yet a boy.

6. Selo yathā ekaghano —
vātena na samīrati
Evam nindāpasamāsū —
na samiṅjanti paṇḍitā. 81.
THE WISE

UNSHAKEN AS A ROCK ARE THE WISE AMIDST PRAISE AND BLAME

6. As a solid rock is not shaken by the wind, even so the wise are not ruffled by praise or blame. 81.

Story

Not knowing who he was, some novices harassed a distinguished Arahant who was short in stature. When the Buddha heard that the monk had shown no resentment, He remarked that Arahants remain unmoved like a rock in praise and blame.

7. Yathā’pi rahado gambhīro —
   vippasanno anāvilo
   Evam dhammāni sutvāna —
   vippasidanti paṇḍitā. 82.

THE WISE ARE PEACEFUL

7. Just as a deep lake is clear and still, even so, on hearing the teachings, the wise become exceedingly peaceful.1 82.

Story

A young woman was rejected by her suitor as her mother sent her to him empty-handed,
having spent every thing she had on the monks. The disappointed woman reviled the monks. The Buddha preached the Dhamma to her and her mind was pacified.

i. By attaining Sainthood.

8. Sabbattha ve sappurisā ca janti —
na kāmakāmā lapayanti santo
Sukhena phutthā athavā dukhena —
na uccāvacam pañḍitā dassayanti. 83.

THE WISE ARE NEITHER ELATED NOR DEPRESSED

8. The good give up (attachment for) every thing; the saintly prattle not with sensual craving: whether affected by happiness or by pain, the wise show neither elation nor depression. 83.

Story

At the invitation of a brahmin the Buddha and His disciples were once spending the rainy season in Veranikā. Though they were neglected and were not well looked after, through forgetfulness on the part of the brahmin, the monks were not displeased. On returning to Sāvatthi they were well looked after, but were not elated thereby. The
THE WISE

Buddha remarked that the wise are neither elated nor depressed.

1. The five Aggregates etc. See v. 203.

9. Na attahetu na parassa hetu
   na puttamicche na dhananī na raṭṭham
Na iccheyya adhammena samiddhim attano —
   sa sīlavā paññavā dhammiko siyā. 84.

SUCCESS SHOULD NOT BE SOUGHT
BY WRONGFUL MEANS

9. Neither for the sake of oneself nor for the sake of another (does a wise person do any wrong); he should not desire son, wealth, or kingdom (by doing wrong); by unjust means he should not seek his own success. Then (only) such a one is indeed virtuous, wise and righteous. 84.

Story

A righteous person desired to leave the world and enter the Order. Although his wife tried to dissuade him each time he sought her permission, he joined the Order, and before long attained Arahantship. Subsequently his wife and son also entered the Order and attained Arahantship. Buddha spoke in praise of them.
10. *Appakā te manussesu* —  
       ye janā pāragāmino  
*Athāyam itarā pājā* —  
       tīramevānudhāvati.  

11. *Ye ca kho sammadakkhāte* —  
       dhamme dhammānuvattino  
*Te janā pāramessanti* —  
       maccudheyyam suduttaram.  

———

**FEW GO BEYOND**

10. Few are there amongst men who go Beyond; the rest of mankind only run about on the bank.\(^1\)

———

**THOSE WHO FOLLOW THE DHAMMA GO BEYOND**

11. But those who act rightly according to the teaching, which is well expounded, those are they who will reach the Beyond-Nibbāna-(crossing) the realm of passions,\(^2\) so hard to cross.

———

**Story**

The devout residents in a certain street decided to give alms to the monks and hear the Dhamma throughout the night. But overcome by passions, some returned home, some remained but kept nodding. Hearing what had happened, the Buddha explained the nature of worldlings.
1. Namely, self-illusion (sakkāyadīthi). The majority are born again in this world.
2. Maccudheyya. i.e., worldly existence where passions dominate.

12. Kaṇham dhammaṁ vippahāya
    sukkaṁ bhāvetha paṇḍito
  Okā anokāṁ āgamma
    viveke yatīha dūramāṁ. 87.

13. Tatrabhiratim iccheyya
    hitvā kāme akiñcano
  Pariyodapeyya attānam
    cittaklesehi paṇḍito. 88.

14. Yesam sambodhiangesu
    samma cittam subhāvitam
  Ādānapatiṇissagge
    anūpādāya ye ratā
  Khīnasavā jutimanto
    te loke parinibbutā. 89.

---

GIVE UP EVIL. CULTIVATE GOOD
SEEK HAPPINESS IN SOLITUDE
THE NON-ATTACHED ARE PEACEFUL

12-13. Coming from home to the homeless, the wise man should abandon dark states¹ and cultivate the bright. He should seek great delight in detachment (Nibbāna), so hard to enjoy. Giving up sensual pleasures, with no impediments,² the wise man should cleanse himself of the impurities of the mind. 87-88.
14. Whose minds are well perfected in the 
Factors of Enlightenment, who, without clinging, 
delight in "the giving up of grasping" (i.e., 
Nibbāna), they, the corruption-free, shining ones, 
have attained Nibbāna even in this world. 89.

---

Story

Five hundred monks visited the Buddha and 
He admonished them.

---

1. The dark states (kanhaṁ dhammaṁ) are the 
ten kinds of evil deeds, and the bright states 
(sukkhaṁ) are the ten kinds of good deeds. 
See notes on vv. 42, 43.

2. The five Hindrances (nīvarana) that obstruct 
the way to Deliverance. They are sense- 
desires (kāmacchanda) ill-will (vyāpāda), sloth 
and torpor (thīnamiddha), restlessness and 
brooding (uddhacca-kukkucca), and indecision 
(vicikicchā). See A Manual of Buddhism by 
the translator.

3. See note on v. 44.

4. There are four kinds of grasping—namely, 
sense-desires, false beliefs, adherence to 
(wrongful) rites and ceremonies, and self-
illusion.
Chapter 7

ARAHANTA\(^1\) VAGGA
THE WORTHY

1. *Gataddhino visokassa — vippamuttassa sabbadhi*
   *Sabbaganthappahinassa — parilāho na vijjati.*

---

NO SUFFERING FOR THE EMANCIPATED

1. For him who has completed the journey,\(^2\) for him who is sorrowless, for him who from everything\(^3\) is wholly free,\(^4\) for him who has destroyed all Ties,\(^5\) the fever (of passion) exists not.\(^6\)

---

Story

The Venerable Devadatta attempted to kill the Buddha by hurling a stone from a rock above. It struck against another rock and a flying splinter hit His foot, causing intense physical pain. Jivaka the physician dressed the wound and left, saying
that he would return to undress it after seeing a patient in the city. He could not return in due time as the city gate was closed. He was worried that the Buddha would be subject to intense pain. The Buddha read his thought and ordered the Venerable Ananda to remove the dressing. On the following morning Jivaka hurried to the monastery and inquired whether the Buddha was subject to much pain. Then the Buddha explained the mental attitude of an Emancipated One.

1. *Arahanta* has several meanings. It may be interpreted as “Worthy One”. “Passionless One”. Or one who commits no evil even secretly. He has got rid of both death and birth. After death, in conventional terms, he attains *parinibbāna*. Until his death he serves other seekers of truth by example and by precept.

2. Of life in the round of existence, i.e., an Arahant.

3. *Sabbadhi*, the five Aggregates, etc.

4. One gives up sorrow by attaining *Anāgāmi*, the third stage of Sainthood. It is at this stage one eradicates completely attachment to sense-desires and ill-will or aversion.

5. There are four kinds of *ganthas* (Ties)—namely, 1. covetousness (*abhijjhā*). 2. ill-will (*vyā-pāda*). 3. indulgence in (wrongful) rites and ceremonies (*stilabbataparāmāsa*); and 4. adherence to one’s preconceptions as truth (*idam saccābhīnivesa*).
THE WORTHY

6. This verse refers to the ethical state of an Arahant.

Heat is both physical and mental. An Arahant experiences bodily heat as long as he is alive, but is not thereby worried. Mental heat of passions he experiences not.

2. Uyyuñjanti satimanto —
na nikete ramanti te
Hamsa' va pallalam hitva —
okam okam jahanti te. 91.

ARAHANTS ARE FREE FROM ATTACHMENT

2. The mindful exert themselves. To no abode are they attached. Like swans that quit their pools, home after home they abandon (and go).1

I. Arahants wander whithersoever they like without any attachment to any particular place as they are free from the conception of "I" and "mine".

Story

Some monks misconstrued the conduct of the Venerable Kassapa and discussed amongst themselves that he still had attachment to his supporters
and kinsmen. The Buddha heard their talk and remarked that the Venerable Kassapa was free from attachment.

3. Yesaṁ sannicayo natthi — ye pariṇātabhojanā
   Suṇālo animito ca — vimokkho yassa gocaro
   Ākāse' va sakuntānam — gati tesam durannayā.  92.

BE NOT ATTACHED TO FOOD

3. They for whom there is no accumulation,1 who reflect well over their food,2 who have Deliverance,3 which is Void and Signless, as their object,—their course like that of birds in the air cannot be traced.  92.

Story

A monk stored food for future use. The Buddha advised him not to do so and explained the right attitude of a good monk.

1. There are two kinds of accumulation—namely, kammic activities and the four necessaries of life.

The former tend to prolong life in Samsāra and the latter, though essential, may prove an obstacle to spiritual progress.
2. To get rid of the desire for food.
3. Nibbāna is Deliverance from suffering (vimokkha). It is called Void because it is void of lust, hatred and ignorance, not because it is nothingness or annihilation. Nibbāna is a positive supramundane state which cannot be expressed in mundane words. It is Signless because it is free from the signs of lust etc., Arahants experience Nibbānic bliss while alive. It is not correct to say that Arahants exist after death, or do not exist after death, for Nibbāna is neither eternalism nor nihilism. In Nibbāna nothing is eternalised nor is anything, except passions, annihilated.

Arahants experience Nibbānic bliss by attaining to the fruit of Arahantship in this life itself.

4. Yassāsavā parikkhiṇā —
   āhāre ca anissito
Suññato animitto ca —
   vimokkho yaśa gocaro
Ākāse’va sakuntānām —
   padam tassa durannayam. 93.

FREE ARE THE UNDEFILED ONES

4. He whose corruptions are destroyed, he who is not attached to food, he who has Deliverance, which is Void and Signless, as his object,—his path, like that of birds in the air, cannot be traced.
Story

When his supporters brought food in abundance the Venerable Anuruddha was unjustly blamed by some monks saying that he was inducing the people to do so to show his influence. The Buddha remarked that the supporters' generosity was not due to any inducement on the part of the Venerable Anuruddha and added that the Unde-filed. Ones waste no time in talking about their requisites.

5. Yass' indriyāni samatham gatāni —
   assā yathā sāraṭhinā sudantā
   Pahanamānassa anāsavassa —
   devā'pi tassa pihayanti lādino. 94.

THE SENSE-CONTROLLED ARE
DEAR TO ALL

5. He whose senses are subdued, like steeds well-trained by a charioteer, he whose pride is destroyed and is free from the corruptions,—such a steadfast one even the gods hold dear. 94.

Story

Sakka, king of the gods, paid great reverence to the Venerable Kaccāyana. Some monks accused Sakka of favouritism. The Buddha reproved them and remarked that Arahants like the Venerable
THE WORTHY

Kaccāyana, whose senses are well subdued, are dear to both gods and men alike.

6. Paṭhavi samo no virujjhati —
indakhilūpamo tādi subbato
Rahado’ va apetakaddamo —
samsārā na bhavanti tādino. 95

LIKE THE EARTH ARAHANTS
RESENT NOT

6. Like the earth, a balanced and well-disciplined person resents not. He is comparable to an Indakhīla.¹ Like a pool, unsullied by mud, is he; to such a balanced one² life’s wanderings do not arise.³ 95

Story

Inadvertently the Venerable Sāriputta brushed against the ear of a monk who was jealous of him. The latter reported this unconscious discourtesy to the Buddha. Questioned by the Buddha about the incident, the Venerable Sāriputta, without asserting his innocence, described his humble ways ever since he became a monk. Remorse overtook the erring monk, who now implored pardon from the Venerable Sāriputta, who in his turn sought pardon from him if he had done any wrong. The Buddha extolled the Venerable Sāriputta, comparing him to the unresenting earth.

89
1. By *indakhīla* is meant either a column as firm and high as that of Sakka’s, or the chief column that stands at the entrance to a city. Commentators state that these *indakhīlas* are firm posts which are erected either inside or outside the city as an embellishment. Usually they are made of bricks or of durable wood and are octagonal in shape. Half of the post is embedded in the earth, hence the metaphor ‘as firm and steady as an *indakhīla*’.  

2. *Tādi* is one who has neither attachment to desirable objects nor aversion to undesirable objects. Nor does he cling to anything. Amidst the eight worldly conditions—gain and loss, fame and infamy, blame and praise, happiness and pain—an Arahant remains unperturbed, manifesting neither attachment nor aversion, neither elation nor depression.  

3. As they are not subject to birth and death. See note on sāṃsāra, v. 60.

7. *Santam tassa manam hoti* —  
   *santā vācā ca kamma ca*  
   *Sammadaññāvimuttassa* —  
   *uṭpasantassa tādino.*

---

**THE CALM ARE THE PEACEFUL**

7. Calm is his mind, calm is his speech, calm is his action, who, rightly knowing, is wholly freed,  
perfectly peaceful, and equipoised.
THE WORTHY

Story

While attempting to awaken, with his fan, a pupil novice who was thought to be asleep, a teacher accidentally injured the pupil’s eye. Later, when the teacher tried to close the door, he injured the pupil’s hand too. But the pupil showed no resentment at the carelessness of his teacher. He was well restrained. The Buddha praised him.

1. From all defilements.
2. Since his mind is absolutely pure.

8. Assadāho akataññū ca —
   sandhicchedo ca yo naro
   Hatāvakāso vantāso —
   sa ve uttamaśporiso. 97.

Noble is he who is not credulous

8. 'The man who is not credulous, who understands the Uncreate (Nibbāna), who has cut off the links, who has put an end to occasion (of good and evil), who has eschewed all desires, he indeed, is a supreme man. 97.

Story

The Buddha put some questions to the Venerable Sāriputta with regard to faith. Sāriputta
replied that as he had realized the Paths and Fruits, he would not act by mere faith in the Buddha. The monks were displeased to hear that he refused to believe in the Buddha. Thereupon the Buddha explained to the monks that Sāriputta was not open to censure as he believed through personal experience and not through mere faith in another.

1. The pun in the original Pāli is lost in the translation.

2. Assaddho, lit., unfaithful. He does not merely accept from other sources because he himself knows from personal experience.

3. Akata, Nibbāna. It is so called because it is not created by anyone. Akkataññī can also be interpreted as ungrateful.

4. The links of existence and rebirth. Sandhīcchedo also means a housebreaker, that is, a burglar.

5. Hata + avakāso he who has destroyed the opportunity.

6. Vanta + āso = he who eats vomit is another meaning.

7. By means of the four paths of Sainthood. Gross forms of desire are eradicated at the first three stages, the subtle forms at the last stage.
THE WORTHY

9. Gāme vā yadi vā raṁñe —
ninne vā' yadi vā thale
Yatthārahaṁto viharanti —
tam bhūmim rāmaṇeyyakam 98.

DEIGHTFUL IS THE SPOT WHERE
ARAHANTS DWELL

9. Whether in village or in forest, in vale or on hill,\(^1\) wherever Arahants dwell,—delightful, indeed, is that spot.

________________________

Story

Revata, youngest brother of the Venerable Sāriputta, renounced the world and before long attained Arahantship. He took delight in living alone in the forest. When the monks had meals with the Buddha at Visākhā's residence she inquired about the forest where the Venerable Revata dwell. Thereupon the Buddha commented on the attractiveness of forests where Arahants dwell.

________________________

1. Ninna and thala, lit., low-lying and elevated grounds.

10. Ramaṇiyāni araṇāni —
yaiṭha na ramati jano
Vitarāgā rammussanti —
na te kāmagavesino. 99.

________________________

93
DELIGHTFUL ARE THE FORESTS TO THE PASSIONLESS

10. Delightful are the forests where worldlings delight not; the passionless will rejoice (therein), (for) they seek no sensual pleasures.

Story

A monk was meditating in a pleasure park. A courtesan, who had an assignation with a certain person to meet in the park, repaired thither, but the man did not turn up. As she was strolling about she saw the monk and attempted to tempt him. The Buddha, perceiving the scene with his Divine Eye, projected himself before the monk and commented on the attractiveness of the forests where the passionless dwell.

1. The passionless Arahants rejoice in secluded forests which have no attraction for worldlings.
Chapter 8

SAHASSA VAGGA
THOUSANDS

1. Sahassam api ce vācā —
anatthaṃpadasamhitā
Ekam gāthāpadam seyyo —
Yam sutvā upasammati. 100.

———

ONE USEFUL SENTENCE IS BETTER THAN
A THOUSAND USELESS WORDS

1. Better than a thousand utterances, compri-
sing useless words, is one single beneficial word, by
hearing which one is pacified. 100.

———

Story

A bloodthirsty villain joined a band of thieves
and committed many crimes.

Later, he acted as the public executioner. The
Venerable Sāriputta converted him. Subsequently
he underwent such a complete transformation
that after death he was born in a heavenly state. The Buddha explained that his good rebirth was due to the compassion and salutary advice of so spiritual an adviser as the Venerable Sāriputta.

3. **Sahassam api ce gāthā anatthapadasamhitā**
   
   *Ekāṁ gāthāpadam seyyo* — yam̄ suṭvā upasammati.*

---

**ONE USEFUL VERSE IS BETTER THAN A THOUSAND USELESS VERSES**

2. Better than a thousand verses, comprising useless words, is one beneficial single line, by hearing which one is pacified.

---

**Story**

A ship-wrecked person swam with difficulty to the shore and saved himself. As he went about clothed with the bark of trees people mistook him for an Arahant. Realizing his folly, he went to see the Buddha and was converted by His beneficial words of wisdom.

---

3. **Ye ca gāthāsatam bhāse anatthapadasamhitā**
   
   *Ekāṁ gāthāpadam seyyo* — yam̄ suṭvā upasammati.*

---
THOUSANDS

4. Yo sahassāṁ sahassena —
   saṅgāme mānuse jine
Ekaṁ ca jeyya m'attānam —
   sa ve saṅgāmajuttamo. 103.

BETTER THAN A HUNDRED USELESS WORDS IS ONE WORD OF THE DHAMMA.
SELF-CONQUEST IS THE BEST OF ALL CONQUESTS

3. Should one recite a hundred verses, comprising useless words, better is one single word of the Dhamma, by hearing which one is pacified. 102.

4. Though one should conquer a million men in battlefield, yet he, indeed, is the noblest victor who has conquered himself. 103.

Story

A wealthy maiden fell in love with a thief and married him. Later, the husband took the wife to the top of a cliff and wanted to rob her of her jewelry and kill her. The wife’s entreaties proved useless. Under the pretext of paying her last respects to him, she got behind him and pushed him down the cliff. Later, she became a nun and, meeting the Venerable Sāriputta, heard the Dhamma, and attained Arahatship. The bhikkhus discussed how she had battled with a bandit and

97
later, hearing a few words of the Dhamma, had become an Arahant.

The Buddha then spoke on the efficacy of the words of Truth and on the importance of self-conquest.

1. *Sahassarī sahassena*, thousand multiplied by a thousand, that is, ten lakhs. (Commentary).

5. *Attā have jītaṁ seyyo*  
   *yā cā'yaṁ itarā pājā*  
   *Attadantassa posassa*  
   *niccaṁ saññatacārino.*  
   104.

6. *N'eva devo na gandhabbo*  
   *na māro saha brahmunā*  
   *Jītaṁ apajītaṁ kayirā*  
   *tathārūpassa jantuṁ.*  
   105.

BE RATHER A VICTOR OF YOURSELF THAN A VICTOR OF OTHERS.  
NONE CAN TURN INTO DEFEAT SELF-VICTORY

5. 6. Self-conquest\(^1\) is, indeed, far greater than the conquest of all other folk; neither a god nor a gandhabba,\(^2\) nor Māra\(^3\) with Brahmā,\(^4\) can win back the victory of such a person who is self-subdued and ever lives in restraint. 104, 105.

Story

A gambler questioned the Buddha about the causes of loss. The Buddha answered his question
and inquired of him how he earned his living. When he replied that it was by gambling, which resulted in both gain and loss, the Buddha explained that real victory was self-victory.

1. *Atta*—The Buddha often uses this term in the sense of oneself or mind but not in the sense of a soul or special self.

2. A class of beings who are supposed to be heavenly musicians.

3. Here Māra is used in the sense of god.

4. Another class of beings, even superior to the gods in heaven, who have developed the Jhānas (ecstasies).

7. *Māse māse sahassena* —
   \[ \text{yo yajetha satam samam} \]
   \[ \text{Ekañ ca bhāvitattānam} \] —
   \[ \text{muhuttam api pūjaye} \]
   \[ Sā y'eva pūjanā seyyo \] —
   \[ yañ ce vassasatam hutam. 106. \]

---

**A MOMENT'S HONOUR TO THE WORTHY IS BETTER THAN LONG CONTINUED HONOUR TO THE UNWORTHY**

7. Though, month after month with a thousand, one should make an offering for a hundred years, yet, if, only for a moment, one should
honour (a Saint) who has perfected himself,—that honour is, indeed, better than a century of sacrifice.

8. *Yo ce vassasatam jantu* — *aggim paricare vane*

*Ekañ ca bhāvitattānam* — *muhuttam api pūjaye*

*Sā y’eva pūjanā seyyo* — *yañ ce vassasatam hutm.*

A MOMENT’S HONOUR TO THE PURE IS BETTER THAN A CENTURY OF FIRE-SACRIFICE

8. Though, for a century, a man should tend the (sacred) fire in the forest, yet, if, only for a moment, he should honour (a Saint) who has perfected himself,—that honour is, indeed, better than a century of fire-sacrifice.

Story

The Venerable Sāriputta’s nephew was in the habit of slaying a beast monthly in tending the
THOUSANDS

sacrificial fire, expecting rebirth in a heaven as taught by his teacher. The Venerable Sāriputta conducted him to the presence of the Buddha, who taught him the right path.

9. *Yam kiñci itthami va hutam va loke* —
   *samvaccaraṁ yajetha puññapekho*
   *Sabbam pi tam na catubhāgameti* —
   *abhivādanā ujjugatesu seyyo.* 108.

BEETTER THAN SACRIFICIAL SLAUGHTER OF ANIMALS IS HONOUR TO THE PURE ONES

9. In this world whatever gift\(^1\) or alms a person seeking merit should offer for a year, all that is not worth a single quarter of the reverence towards the Upright\(^2\) which is excellent. 108.

Story

A friend of the Venerable Sāriputta annually made a sacrificial slaughter at great expense. The Buddha convinced him of the right kind of homage.

1. According to the commentary *itthami* is that which is given on festival occasions, and *hutam* is that which is prepared and given
either to guests or with a belief in kamma and results.

The idea conveyed by this stanza is that reverence paid to a Saint is far superior to gifts and alms given to worldlings.

2. They are the Sotāpannas (Stream-Winners) and others who have attained sanctification.

10. Abhivādanasilissa —

                   niccam vaddhāpacāyino

Cattāro dhammā vaṭṭhanti —

                   āyu vanno sukham balam. 109.

BLESSED INDEED ARE THEY WHO HONOUR THOSE WORTHY OF HONOUR

10. For one who is in the habit of constantly honouring and respecting the elders, four blessings increase—age, beauty, bliss, and strength. 109.

Story

Hearing that his son would die in his childhood, a father, as advised by the Buddha, invited the bhikkhus to recite the Scriptural Texts continuously for seven nights and seven days. On the last day the Buddha Himself was present to recite the Sacred Texts. By the power of the Teacher’s compassion the child gained longevity. When the monks discussed how the child who would have died in his childhood gained long
THOUSANDS

life through the Buddha’s compassion, the Buddha spoke on the blessings that accrue to one who honours the worthy.

II. Yo ca vassasatam jīve —
   dussīlo asamāhito
   Ekāham jīvitam seyyo —
   sīlavantassa jhāyino. 110.

A SHORT BUT VIRTUOUS LIFE IS BETTER THAN A LONG BUT IMMORAL LIFE

II. Though one should live a hundred years, immoral and uncontrolled, yet better, indeed, is a single day’s life of one who is moral and meditative. 110.

Story

Some men in their old age became monks and wished to retire to the forest to meditate. The Buddha, foreseeing a danger, advised them to take with them the young novice Sañākicca, an Arahant. A band of thieves, hearing of their presence in the forest, approached them and demanded a monk to be given as a votive offering. All the monks from the most senior to the youngest volunteered to offer their lives. But the young novice obtained their permission to sacrifice his life for the sake

103
of the others. The bandits took him to their lair and made preparations to kill him. The novice quietly attained to Supreme Ecstasy.¹ The ring-leader twice tried to kill him with his sword but failed. Awestricken, the ringleader prostrated himself before him, heard the Dhamma and desired to become a monk. All his followers expressed the same desire. The novice ordained them and returned safely to the other monks who were still meditating in the forest. He then took leave of them and going to the Buddha mentioned to Him what happened. The Buddha spoke on the value of a virtuous life.

1. **Nirodha-samāpatti**. This is a state when the stream of consciousness temporarily ceases to flow. When in such a state, a Saint is immune from danger.

12. **Yo ca vassasatam āve**

   dūppañño asamāhi to

   Ekāham āve tam seyyo

   paññavantassa jhāyino.  

   III.  

**A BRIEF LIFE OF WISDOM IS BETTER THAN A LONG LIFE OF STUPIDITY**

12. Though one should live a hundred years without wisdom and control, yet better, indeed, is a single day's life of one who is wise and meditative.
THOUSANDS

Story

A monk, having attained Arahantship in a forest, was coming to see the Buddha. As he was tired he sat on a flat rock and was enwrapped in Jhāna ecstasy. Some thieves, having plundered a village, were carrying their boot when they came up to the rock where the monk was seated in meditation. Mistaking him for a tree stump as it was dark, they piled their stolen goods on his head and slept. When the day dawned they discovered their mistake and, begging pardon from him, became monks. With their teacher they came to the Buddha. Hearing of their conversion, the Buddha praised a life of wisdom.

13. Yo ca vassasalam jīve —
     kusīto hinaviriyo
   Ekāham jīvitam seyyo —
     viriyam ārabhato dalham

13. Though one should live a hundred years idle and inactive, yet better, indeed, is a single day’s life of one who makes an intense effort. 112.

Story

A youth of good repute became a monk endowed with faith but, getting disappointed,
attempted to kill himself. He tried to cause a serpent to bite him but it did not. Then he took a razor and tried to cut his windpipe. At that moment he reflected on his flawless life, meditated and attained Arahantship. The monks inquired of the Buddha how in an instant he who had attempted to commit suicide could have attained Arahantship. The Buddha spoke in praise of energetic striving.

A BRIEF LIFE OF REFLECTION IS BETTER THAN A LONG LIFE OF NON-REFLECTION

14. Though one should live a hundred years without comprehending how all things rise and pass away, yet better, indeed, is a single day’s life of one who comprehends how all things rise and pass away.

Story

Paṭācārā, lost her husband, her children, her parents and her only brother under tragic circumstances. The Buddha comforted her and she became a nun. One day while she was washing her feet,
she noticed how the water flowed away in three stages—some drops of water flowed and subsided close to her, some farther away from her, some still farther away from her. This induced her to meditate on the transiency of life, of which she had personal experience. The Buddha saw her with His Divine Eye and, projecting Himself before her, uttered this stanza. Soon she attained Arahant-ship.

1. The rise and decay of mind and matter—namely, the impermanence of all conditioned things. A disciple of the Buddha is expected to contemplate the fleeting nature of life, so that he may not be attached to illusory material pleasures.

15. Yo ca vassasatam jīve
   apassam amatam ādāna
   Ekāham jīvitam seyyo
   ādāna amatam ādāna.

ONE DAY OF EXPERIENCING THE DEATHLESS IS BETTER THAN A CENTURY WITHOUT SUCH AN EXPERIENCE

15. Though one should live a hundred years without seeing the Deathless State, yet better, indeed, is a single day’s life of one who sees the Deathless State.
Story

A young mother named Kisa Gotami, lost her only child. As she had never come across an instance of death she carried the corpse on her hip believing the child to be ill and searching for a remedy. A wise man directed her to the Buddha who advised her to collect some mustard seed from a household where none had died. She got mustard but found no household where none had died. The Truth dawned upon her. When she returned, the Buddha preached the Dhamma to her. She became a nun. One day she observed the flickering of a lamp and reflected on the impermanence of life. The Buddha projected His image before her and uttered this stanza comparing life to flickering lamp.

---

1. *Atatäya padäy*, the unconditioned state of Nibbana, free from birth, decay and death.

---

16. *Yo ca vassasatam jíve —
    apassam dhammamuttamam
Ekāham jívitam seyyo —
    passato dhammamuttamam.*

---

ONE DAY OF PERCEIVING THE DHAMMA IS BETTER THAN A CENTURY WITHOUT SUCH PERCEPTION

16. Though one should live a hundred years not seeing the Truth Sublime,¹ yet better, indeed,
is a single day's life of one who sees the Truth Sublime.

Story

A wealthy widow had several sons and daughters. At the request of the children, who promised to support her, she distributed her property amongst them. But the ungrateful children neglected her. Greatly disappointed, she became a nun. Constantly she reflected on the Dhamma. The Buddha preached to her on the importance of the Dhamma and she attained Arahantship.

1. The nine supramundane States—namely, the four Paths, the four Fruits, and Nibbāna.
Chapter 9

PĀPA VAGGA
EVIL

1. Abhittharetha kalyāne —
   pāpā cittam nivāraye
   Dandham hi karoto puññam —
   pāpasmin ramati mano. 116.

BE QUICK IN DOING GOOD;
SUPPRESS EVIL

1. Make haste in doing good;¹ check your mind from evil;² for the mind of him who is slow in doing meritorious actions delights in evil. 116.

Story

A husband and wife had only one under garment each and only one upper garment between the two of them. One day the husband heard the Dhamma from the Buddha and desired to offer to Him his only upper garment, but selfishness overcame him. Throughout the night he battled with his selfishness. Finally he offered the garment and exclaimed, “I have won! I have
won!” Hearing his story, the king rewarded him handsomely.

1. There should be no delay in doing good deeds. One must avail oneself of every opportunity to do good. Such good actions redound to one’s eternal happiness. Every effort also should be made to control the mind as it is prone to evil. The impure mind rejoices in evil thoughts.

2. Pāpa, evil, is that which defiles one’s mind. It is that which leads to woeful states. “Sin”, purely a Christian term, is not a good English equivalent for pāpa. What is associated with the three immoral roots such as lust (rāga), anger (dosa), and delusion (moha) is evil. There are ten kinds of evil. They are killing, stealing, and sexual misconduct (which are committed by deed); lying, slandering, harsh speech, and frivolous talk (which are committed by word); and covetousness, ill-will, and false views (which are committed by mind).

3. Puñña, merit is that which cleanses the mind. Kusala is another term for puñña. There are ten kinds of meritorious deeds. See notes on vv. 42, 43.

2. Pāpaṁ ce pūriso kāyirā  
na tam kāyirā punappunam
Na tamhi chandaṁ kāyirātha  
dukkho pāpam uccayo.

117.
DO NO EVIL AGAIN AND AGAIN

2. Should a person commit evil, he should not do it again and again; he should not find pleasure therein: painful is the accumulation of evil.  117.

Story

A monk used to commit a wrong act again and again. The Buddha reproved him and uttered this stanza.

3. Puññam ce āṇiso kayirā —
   kayirāth etam punappunam
   Tamhi chandaṁ kayirātha —
   sukho puññassa uccayo.  118.

DO GOOD AGAIN AND AGAIN

3. Should a person perform a meritorious action, he should do it again and again; he should find pleasure therein: blissful is the accumulation of merit.  118.

Story

A poor but devout woman offered some food to an Arahant. Bitten by a serpent, she died and was born in a heavenly state. As a goddess she came early in the morning to clean the premises
of the Arahant to increase her good fortune. The Arahant prevented her from doing so. She was griefed. The Buddha perceived her sad state of mind and advised her.

4. *Pāpo' pi passati bhadram* —  
    *yāva pāpaṁ na paccati*  
    *Yadā ca paccati pāpaṁ* —  
    *atha pāpo pāpāni passati.*  

5. *Bhadro' pi passati pāpaṁ* —  
    *yāva bhadram na paccati*  
    *Yadā ca paccati bhadram* —  
    *atha bhadro bhadrāni passati.*  

---

**BY ITS EFFECTS EVIL IS KNOWN**

**BY ITS EFFECTS GOOD IS KNOWN**

4. Even an evil-doer sees good as long as evil ripens not; but when it bears fruit, then he sees the evil results.¹  

5. Even a good person sees evil so long as good ripens not; but when it bears fruit then the good one sees the good results.²  

---

**Story**

Anāthapindika very generously supported the Sangha and lost the greater part of his fortune.
He was criticised for his extravagant almsgiving. But ignoring all criticism, he continued his generous acts. Appreciating his generosity, the Buddha uttered these verses to show the results of both good and bad.

1. A wicked person may lead a prosperous life as the result of his past good deeds. He will experience happiness owing to the potentiality of his past good over the present evil,—a seeming injustice which often prevails in this world. When once, according to the inexorable law of kamma, his evil actions fructify, then he perceives the painful effects of his wickedness.

2. A virtuous person, as often happens, may meet with adversity owing to the potentiality of his past evil actions over his present good acts. He is convinced of the efficacy of his present good deeds only when, at the opportune moment, they fructify, giving him abundant bliss.

The fact that at times the wicked are prosperous and the virtuous are unfortunate is itself strong evidence in support of the belief in kamma and rebirth.

6. Māvamaññethaḥ pāpassa —
   na mam tathā gamissati
   Udabindunāpātena —
   udakumbho' pi pūrāti
   Pūrati bālo pāpassa —
   thokathokam'pi ācinam. 121.
THINK NOT LIGHTLY OF EVIL

6. Do not disregard evil, saying, “It will not come nigh unto me”; by the falling of drops even a water-jar is filled; likewise the fool, gathering little by little, fills himself with evil. 121.

Story

A monk was indifferent to a slight wrong which he was continually doing. As he would not give heed to the advice of the other monks the matter was reported to the Buddha. In the presence of the Buddha too he remarked that one should not be so much concerned with such a slight wrong. The Buddha advised him not to disregard even a slight wrong.

7. Māvamaññetha¹ puññassa
   na manaṃ tam āgamissati
   Udayinipātena
   udakumbho' pi pūrati
   Puriti dhīro puññassa
   thokathokam pi ācinam. 122.

THINK NOT LIGHTLY OF GOOD

7. Do not disregard merit, saying “It will not come nigh unto me”; by the falling of drops even a water-jar is filled; likewise the wise man, gathering little by little, fills himself with good. 122.
Story

A wise man, hearing the Buddha preach on the giving of alms, induced a whole village to give alms to the Buddha and the Sangha according to their means. When he went collecting provisions a rich man, misconstruing his motive, contributed a very small amount. While thanks were being offered to the various donors the rich man went there with the object of killing the wise man if he should speak disparagingly of him. The wise man on the contrary thanked all equally and wished them a great reward. The rich man felt remorse and sought his pardon.

Hearing the story, the Buddha discoursed on the value of even a small gift.

1. Māppamaññetha in most texts.

8. Vānījo' va bhayaṁ maggam
    appasaitho mahaddhano
Visam jivitukāmo' va
    pāpāni parivajjaye. 123.

SHUN EVIL LIKE A PERILOUS PATH

8. Just as a merchant, with a small escort and great wealth, avoids a perilous route, just as one desiring to live avoids poison, even so should one shun evil things. 123.
Story

A merchant, accompanied by many monks, set out with a caravan. Some robbers tried to waylay him but failed in their attempt. The monks left the merchant and went to the Buddha and told Him of the attempt of the robbers. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

9. Pāṇimhi ce vaṇo n’āssa
hareyya pāṇinā visañ
Nābbāṇam visam anveti
    —
natthi pāpan akubbato. 124.

NO EVIL TO THOSE WHO HAVE NO BAD INTENTION

9. If no wound there be in one’s hand, one may carry poison in it. Poison does not affect one who has no wound. There is no ill for him who does no wrong.1

Story

A rich man’s daughter, who was a Stream-Winner, fell in love with a hunter owing to past association, and eloped with him. She gave birth to several sons. The wife, although a Sotāpanna, was in the habit of giving bows and arrows to the husband to go hunting. Amongst the monks a
question arose whether she committed an evil by doing so. The Buddha explained that she was blameless as she did so in obedience to her husband and having no evil intention.

1. That is, for one who has no evil intention.

10. Yo appaduṭṭhassa narassa dussati  —
    suddāhassa posassa anāṅganassa
  Tam eva bālam pacceti pāpaṁ  —
    sukhumo rajo pāṭivātam' va khitto. 125.

WHO HARMS THE INNOCENT COMES TO GRIEF

10. Whoever harms a harmless person, one pure and guiltless, upon that very fool the evil recoils like fine dust thrown against the wind. 125.

Story

A hunter went hunting with his dogs. On the way he met a monk. The hunter could not bag any game. While returning he met the same monk. He thought that his failure to bag any game was due to having met the monk. So he set his dogs upon him. The innocent monk climbed a tree to save himself. The hunter pierced his soles
with his arrows. As the monk was struggling in pain his robe fell upon the hunter, covering him. The dogs, thinking that it was the monk that had fallen, bit him to death. The monk approached the Buddha and wished to know whether he had done any wrong. The Buddha cleared his doubts and described the evil consequences that accrue to one who harms an innocent person.

II. Gabbham eke uṇḍajjanti — nirayaṁ pāpakammino
Saggam sugatino yanti — parinibbanti anāsavā. 126.

BIRTH DEPENDS ON ACTIONS

II. Some are born¹ in a womb; evil-doers (are born) in woeful states;² the well-conducted go to blissful states;³ the Undeﬁled Ones⁴ pass away into Nibbāna. 126.

Story

Daily a monk used to visit the house of a lapidary, whose wife prepared alms for him. One day in the presence of the monk a bird that was being reared in the house swallowed a gem when the lapidary had gone inside. The lapidary, not finding the gem, inquired about it of the monk,
who denied having taken it. But the lapidary, suspected the monk and mercilessly tortured him. Blood flowed from his body. The bird came to drink the blood. The lapidary kicked the bird and it died. Then the monk revealed what had happened. The lapidary ripped up the stomach of the bird and discovered the gem. He begged pardon from the monk. When the monks inquired of the Buddha stated that actions determine birth.

1. According to Buddhism there are four kinds of birth—namely, egg-born (anḍaja), womb-born (jalābuja), moisture-born (samśedaja), and spontaneous birth (opapālika).

2. Niraya = ni + aya = devoid of happiness. There are four kinds of niraya—namely, woeful state (apāya), the animal kingdom (tiracchānayoni), the plane of Petas (petāyoni) and the plane of Asura-demons (asurayoni). None of these states is eternal. According to their evil kamma beings may be born in such woeful states. Departing from those states, they may be born in blissful states according to their past good kamma.

3. Sagga = su + agga = full of happiness. In the sense-sphere (kāmaloka) the human plane and the six celestial planes are regarded as blissful states. They too are not eternal.

3. Arahants, after death, are not born any more, but attain Parinibbāna.
NOBODY IS EXEMPT FROM THE EFFECTS OF EVIL KAMMA

12. Not in the sky, nor in mid-ocean, nor in a mountain cave, is found that place on earth where abiding one may escape from (the consequences) of one's evil deed.

Story

Three groups of monks went to see the Buddha. On their way one group saw a flying crow being burnt to death. Another group saw a woman being drowned in mid-ocean. The other group saw seven monks imprisoned in a cave for seven days. All of them wanted to know from the Buddha the reason for these occurrences. The Buddha related that the crow, as a farmer in a previous birth, had burnt a lazy ox to death, the woman had drowned a dog, and the monks, as cowherds in a previous life, had imprisoned an iguana in an anthill for seven days. The Buddha added that no one is exempt from the consequences of his or her past evil deeds.
1. The Buddhist law of moral causation cannot be bribed, nor can one escape the evil consequences of kamma by seeking refuge in any place on earth. No god, not even a Buddha, can intervene in the operation of kamma.

13. Na antalikkhe na samuddamajjhe
    na pabbatānam vivaram pavissa
Na vijjati so jagatippadeso
    yatthaṭṭhitam nappasahetha maccu. 128.

DEATH CANNOT BE OVERCOME

13. Not in the sky, nor in mid-ocean, nor in a mountain cave, is found that place on earth where abiding one will not be overcome by death. 128.

Story

King Suppabuddha, princes Yasodharā’s father, being angry with the Buddha for having renounced his daughter, started harassing him. The Buddha predicted that Suppabuddha would meet with a tragic death. Suppabuddha tried to avert it, but died as predicted by the Buddha.
Chapter 10

DĀNDA VAGGA
THE ROD OR PUNISHMENT

1. *Sabbe tasanti dāṇḍassa* —
sabbe bhāyanti maccuno
*Attānam upamaṁ katvā* —
na haneyya na ghātaye. 129.

---

KILL NOT

1. All tremble at the rod. All fear death. Comparing others with oneself, one should neither strike nor cause to strike.1 129.

---

Story

Owing to some provocation, a “band of six monks” assaulted a “band of sixteen monks”. The Buddha, hearing of the incident, promulgated a rule with regard to violence and uttered this verse.

---

1. *Na haneyya na ghātaye* = na pahareyya na paharāpeyya (Commentary).
2. Sabbe tasanti danḍassa —
   sabbesam jīvitam piyam
   Attānam upamaṁ katvā —
   na haneyya na ghātaye. 130.

   ———

   LIFE IS DEAR TO ALL

   2. All tremble at the rod. Life is dear to all. Comparing others with oneself, one should neither strike nor cause to strike. 130.

   ———

   Story

   A quarrel arose between a "band of six monks" and a "band of sixteen monks". The latter made threatening gestures. The Buddha spoke on the evil of harming others.

   ———

   3. Sukhakāmāni bhūtāni —
      yo daṇḍena vihimsati
      Attano sukham esāno —
      pecca so na labhate sukham. 131.

   4. Sukhakāmāni bhūtāni —
      yo daṇḍena na himsati
      Attano sukham esāno —
      pecca so labhate sukham. 132.

   ———

   MOLEST NONE

   3. Whoever, seeking his own happiness, harms with the rod other pleasure-loving beings experiences no happiness hereafter. 131.

   ———
THE ROD OR PUNISHMENT

HARM NOT

4. Whoever, seeking his own happiness, harms not with rod other pleasure-loving beings, experiences happiness hereafter. 132.

Story

The Buddha, seeing some children molesting a snake with sticks, advised them to desist.

5. M'āvoca pharusam kañci
   vuttā pātivadeyyu tam
Dukkhā hi sārambhakathā
   pāṭidanda phuseyyu tam. 133.

6. Sace neresi attānaṁ
   kaṁso upahato yathā
Esa patto'si nibbānaṁ
   sārambho te na vijjati. 134.

SPEAK NOT HARSHLY

5. Speak not harshly to anyone. Those thus addressed will retort. Painful, indeed, is vindictive speech. Blows in exchange may bruise you. 133.

SILENCE YOURSELF

6. If, like a cracked gong, you silence yourself, you have already attained Nibbāna¹: no vindictiveness will be found in you. 134.

125
Story

Some monks used abusive language towards another monk, and he retaliated. The Buddha heard about it and spoke on non-retaliation and on the advisability of retaining silence.

1. One who follows this exemplary practice, even though not yet having attained Nibbāna, is regarded as having attained Nibbāna.

7. **Yathā dāṇḍena gopālo**  
   gāvo pāceti gocaram  
   **Evaṁ jarā ca maccu ca**  
   āyum pācenti pāṇinam.  

---

**DECAY AND DEATH ARE UNIVERSAL**

7. As with a staff the herdsman drives his kine to pasture, even so do old age and death drive out the lives of beings.

---

Story

In the house of Visākhā women of varying ages observed the Holy Day. When questioned as to the reason for their pious conduct they gave different replies. Hearing their views, the Buddha spoke on the fleeting nature of life.

1. Here the herdsman resembles decay and death.
2. The cattle resemble life.
3. The pasture ground resembles death.
THE ROD OR PUNISHMENT

8. Atha pāpāni kammāni
   karam bālo na bujjhati
Sehi kammehi dummedho
   aggidaḍḍho' va tappati. 136.

THE EVIL-DOER IS CONSUMED BY
THE EFFECT OF HIS OWN EVIL

8. So, when a fool does wrong deeds, he does not realize (their evil nature); by his own deeds the stupid man is tormented, like one burnt by fire. 136.

Story

The Arahant Moggallāna saw a Peta in the form of a python. The Buddha related that it was due to his past evil action.

9. Yo daṇḍena adandesu
   appāduṭṭhesu dussati
Dasannam aññataram ṭhānam
   khippam eva nigacchati. 137.

10. Vedanāṁ phurasam jānim
    sarīrassa ca bhedaṁ
Garukam vā' pi ābādham
    cittakkhepaṁ va pāpune. 138.

11. Rājato vā upassaggam
    abbhakkhānam va dārunam
Parikkhayaṁ va nātinam
    bhogānam va phaṅguram. 139.
12. Atha v'assa agārāni —
    aggi ḍahati pāvako
Kāyassa bhedā duppañño —
    nirayam so'papajjati. 140.

HE WHO OFFENDS THE INNOCENT COMES TO GRIEF

9. He who with the rod harms the rodless and harmless,¹ soon will come to one of these states:— 137.

10-12. He will be subject to acute pain² disaster, bodily injury, or even grievous sickness, or loss of mind, or oppression by the king, or heavy accusation, or loss of relatives, or destruction of wealth,³ or ravaging fire that will burn his house. Upon the dissolution of the body such unwise man will be born in hell. 138, 139, 140.

Story

Owing to a past heinous evil kamma the Arahant Moggallāna was clubbed to death by bandits. Later, they were captured by the King and burnt alive.

1. Namely, the Arahats who are weaponless and innocent.
2. That might cause death.
3. Loss in business transactions, loss of wealth, etc.
THE ROD OR PUNISHMENT

13. Na naggacariyā na jaṭā na pañkā
     nānāsakā thāndilasāyikā vā
Rajo ca jallam ukkuṭikappadhānam
   sodhenti maccam avitiṇṇakaṅkham. 141.

EXTERNAL PENANCES CANNOT
PURIFY A PERSON

13. Not wandering naked,¹ nor matted locks,²
nor filth,³ nor fasting,⁴ nor lying on the ground,⁵
nor dust,⁶ nor ashes,⁷ nor striving squatting on
the heels,⁸ can purify a mortal who has not
overcome doubts.⁹ 141.

Story

Seeing a monk with many robes, the Buddha
admonished him. He got angry and, throwing
away the outer garment, stood draped in the
under garment. The Buddha then related a
similar incident in the monk's previous existence
and mentioned the futility of austerities.

¹ Gymnososophism is still practised in India.
External dirtiness is regarded by some as a
mark of saintliness. The Buddha denounces
strict asceticism confined to such externals.
The members of His celibate Order follow
the middle path, avoiding the extremes of self-
mortification and self-indulgence. Simplicity,
humility, and poverty should be the chief characteristics of bhikkhus as much as cleanliness.

2. Unwashed matted hair is regarded by the foolish as a mark of holiness.

3. The non-cleansing of teeth, smearing the body with mud, etc.

4. Fasting alone does not tend to purification. The bhikkhus too fast daily between midday and the following dawn.

5. Sleeping on the ground. Bhikkhus only avoid luxurious and high couches.

6. Through not bathing.

7. Rubbing the body with ashes is still practised by some ascetics.

8. Continually sitting and wandering in that posture.

9. With regard to the Buddha, Dhamma, Sangha, etc.

14. **Alaṅkato ce’pi samam careyya**

   **Santo danto niyato brahmaça īri**

   **Sabbesu bhūtesu nidhāya daṃdam**

   **So brāhmaṇo so samāṇo sa bhikkhu.** 142.

---

**NOT BY EXTERNAL APPEARANCE DOES ONE BECOME HOLY**

14. Though gaily decked, if he should live in peace, (with passions) subdued, (and senses) controlled, certain¹ (of the four Paths of Saint-hood), perfectly pure,² laying aside the rod (in his

130
relations) towards all living beings, a Brāhmaṇa indeed is he, an ascetic is he, a bhikkhu is he.

---

**Story**

A minister saw his nautch girl fall dead while dancing. Overcome with grief, he went to the Buddha, who preached to him. Hearing the Dhamma, he attained Arahantship and passed away, though adorned and dressed in state. The monks inquired whether it was proper to call him a samāna. In reply the Buddha stated that holiness did not depend on external appearance.

---

1. *Niyata*. The four Paths are Sotāpatti (Stream-Winner), Sakadāgāmi (Once-Returner), Anāgāmi (Never-Returner), and Arahatta (Worthy).

2. Mrs. Rhys Davids: “Walking in God”, a very misleading phrase, totally foreign to Buddhism. The commentarial explanation is *suddha-cariya*—highest conduct.

3. Absolutely harmless towards all.

4. Because he has cast aside impurities.

5. *Samāna*, because he has cleansed himself of all impurities.

6. *Bhikkhu*, because he has destroyed passions.

7. A gaily decked minister, stricken with grief, listened to the Buddha, seated on an elephant. On hearing the discourse, he realized Arahantship. Simultaneous with his realization his
death occurred. The Buddha then advised his followers to pay him the respect due to an Arahant. When the bhikkhus questioned him how the minister could have attained Arahantship in such elegant dress the Buddha uttered this verse to show that purity comes from within and not from without. In striking contrast to the former this verse clearly indicates the Buddhist view of a holy person. It is not the apparel that counts but internal purity.

15. Hirinisedho puriso  
   koci lokasmin vijjati  
   Yo nindam appabodhati  
   asso bhadro kasām iva.  

16. Asso yathā bhadro kasānivīttho  
   ātāpino saṁvegino bhavātha  
   Saddhāya silena ca viriyena ca  
   samādhinā dhammavinicchayena ca  
   Sampannavijjācaranā patissata  
   pahassatha dukkham idam anappakam.  

THE MODEST ARE RARE IN THIS WORLD

15. (Rarely) is found in this world anyone who, restrained by modesty, avoids reproach, as a thorough-bred horse (avoids) the whip.¹

BE VIRTUOUS AND GET RID OF SUFFERING

16. Like a thorough-bred horse, touched by the whip, even so be strenuous and zealous. By

182
confidence, by virtue, by effort, by concentration, by investigation of the Truth, by being endowed with knowledge and conduct, and by being mindful, get rid of this great suffering.

---

**Story**

A poor youth, whose only possessions were his ragged garment and a potsherd, hung them on the branch of a tree and became a monk. Several times he disrobed and re-entered the Order. Finally he thought of the helpless state he would be in if he were to disrobe again. He meditated and attained Arahanthood. Concerning his discontent and subsequent striving, the Buddha uttered these verses.

---

1. A self-respecting bhikkhu or layman, when obsessed with evil thoughts, tries to eradicate them there and then. This verse indicates that such persons are rare.

2. Vijjācarana. Eight kinds of Knowledge and fifteen kinds of Conduct.
   The eight kinds of Knowledge are:
   
The fifteen kinds of Conduct are:—

Moral restraint, sense-restraint, moderation in eating, wakefulness, faith, moral shame, moral dread, great learning, energy, mindfulness, wisdom and the four Jhānas.

17. Udakam hi nayanti nettikā — usukārā namayanti tejanam
Dārum namayanti tacchakā — attānam damayanti subbatā. 145.

THE GOOD CONTROL THEMSELVES

17. Irrigators lead the waters. Fletchers bend the shafts. Carpenters bend the wood. The virtuous control themselves.¹ 145.

Story

A boy belonging to a respectful family entered the Order. While going on his alms round he noticed irrigators and carpenters controlling inanimate things. This induced him to think of the latent powers of man. He meditated strenuously and attained Arahatship. Hearing of his realization, the Buddha commented on self-control.

¹. Cf. v. 80.
Chapter II

JARĀ VAGGA
OLD AGE

1. Ko nu hāso kimānando nīcamaḥ pājjalite sati
   Andhakārena onaddhā pādīpam na gavessatha. — 146.

SEEK THE LIGHT

1. What is laughter, what is joy, when the world is ever burning? Shrouded by darkness, would you not seek the light? — 146.

Story

Visākhā, the chief lay benefactress of the Buddha, once visited Him, accompanied by some women who, without her knowledge, had become drunk. In their drunken state they discourteously danced and sang before the Buddha. By His psychic powers the Buddha created a darkness
which brought them to their senses. The Buddha then uttered this verse.

1. This world is perpetually consumed with the flames of passions. It is completely shrouded by the veil of ignorance. Being placed in such a world, the wise should try to seek the light of wisdom.

2. Passa cittakatam bimbam arukāyaṁ samussitam
Āturāṁ bahusaṅkappam yassa natthi dhuvam ñhiti. I47.

Foul Is This Gaily Decked Body

2. Behold this beautiful body, a mass of sores, a heaped-up (lump), diseased, much thought of, in which nothing lasts, nothing persists.1 I47.

Story

A young monk fell in love with Sirimā, a beautiful courtesan. Unexpectedly she died. Even when the King ordered the people to have a look at her corpse nobody cared to look at it. Showing the decaying and worm-infested body to the monks, the Buddha spoke on the loathsomeness of the body.

1. As good and pleasant.
OLD AGE

3. Parijinam idam rupam —
   roganiddham pabhaguram
   Bhijjati putisandeho —
   maranantam hi jivitam. 148.

LIFE ENDS IN DEATH

3. Thoroughly worn out is this body, a nest of diseases, perishable. This putrid mass breaks up. Truly, life ends in death. 148.

Story

Seeing an old nun stumble and fall, the Buddha spoke on the fleeting nature of life.

4. Yanimani apatthani —
   alapun' eva sarade
   Kapotakani atthini —
   tani disvana ka rati. 149.

WHAT DELIGHT IN SEEING WHITE BONES?

4. Like gourds cast away in autumn are these dove-hued bones. What pleasure is there in looking at them? 149.

Story

Many monks went to a cemetery to meditate Lust arose in them while meditating on fresh
corpses. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse in admonition.

5. **Aṭṭhīnaṁ nagaram katarī maṁsalohitalepanari**

**Yattha jarā ca maccū ca maṁo makkho ca ohito.**

---

**THIS BODY IS COMPOSED OF FLESH AND BLOOD**

5. Of bones is (this) city made, plastered with flesh and blood. Herein are stored decay, death, conceit, and detraction.

---

**Story**

A beautiful woman became a nun but lacked faith. Fearing that the Buddha would speak depreciatingly of her beauty, she would not visit the Buddha. One day when she came to the preaching hall with the others, the Buddha conjured the vision of a beautiful woman fanning Him. The Buddha then caused the vision to change gradually, reflecting the ravages wrought by old age and death. The Truth dawned upon the woman. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.
OLD AGE

6. Jitranti ve rājarathā suciţā —
   atho sarīram ūpi jaram upeti
   Sataṃ ca dhammo na jaram upeti —
   santo have sabbhi pavedayanti. 151.

RIGHTEOUSNESS DOES NOT WEAR AWAY

6. Even ornamented royal chariots wear out. So too the body reaches old age. But the Dhamma\(^1\) of the Good grows not old. Thus do the Good reveal it among the Good.\(^2\) 151.

Story

Queen Mallikā was a pious woman. After her death when the Buddha visited the palace the King wished to know her place of rebirth. The Buddha revealed where she was reborn, and inspecting the royal chariots, He uttered this verse.

1. The nine supramundane states are the four Paths, the four Fruits and Nibbāna.

2. Such as the Buddhas.

7. Appassutāyam puriso —
   balivaddo' va jirati
   Mañsāni tassa vaddhanti —
   paññā tassa na vaddhati. 152.

ONE WITH LITTLE LEARNING
LACKS WISDOM

7. The man of little learning grows old like the 9x. His muscles grow; his wisdom grows not. 152.

139
Story

A monk always used to utter inappropriate things. Concerning him the Buddha uttered this verse.

8. Anekajāti samsāram
   sandhāvissam anibbisam
   Gahakārakam gavesanto
dukkhā jāti punappunam.  153.

9. Gahakāraka diṭṭho' si
   puna geham na kāhasi
   Sabbā te phāsukā bhaggā
gahakūtam visāṅkhitaṁ
   Visaṅkhāragatam cittaṁ
tāṇhānam khayam ajjhagā.  154.

GRAVING IS THE BUILDER OF
THIS HOUSE

8. Through many a birth I wandered in
   samsāra,1 seeking, but not finding, the builder of
   the house. Sorrowful is it to be born again and
   again.  153.

9. O house-builder! Thou art seen. Thou shalt
   build no house again. All thy rafters are broken.
   Thy ridge-pole is shattered.

   My mind has attained the unconditioned.
   Achieved is the end of craving.  154.
OLD AGE

Story

Immediately after Enlightenment the Buddha uttered this paean of joy.

1. These two verses, the first paean of joy (udāna) uttered by the Buddha immediately after His Enlightenment, are not found elsewhere. As the Venerable Ānanda heard them from the lips of the Buddha they have been inserted here.

Here the Buddha admits his past wanderings in existence which entails suffering, a fact which evidently proves the belief in rebirth. He was compelled to wander, and consequently to suffer, as long as he could not discover the architect who built this house, the body. In His final birth He discovered by His own intuitive wisdom the elusive architect dwelling not outside but within the recesses of His own heart. The architect was Craving or Attachment (tanhā) a self-created force, a mental element latent in all. The discovery of the architect is the eradication of craving by attaining Arahantship which, in this utterance, is alluded to as the end of craving.

The rafters of this self-created house are the defilements (kilesa). The ridge-pole that supports the rafters is ignorance (avījñā), the root cause of all defilements. The shattering of the ridge-pole of ignorance by wisdom results in the complete demolition of the house. The
ridge-pole and the rafters are the material with which the architect builds this undesired house. With their destruction the architect is deprived of the wherewithal to rebuild the house which is not wanted. With the demolition of the house the mind attains the uncondition which is Nibbāna.

10. *Acaritvā brahma-cariyām* — aladdhā yobbane dhanaṁ
   *Jīnakoñcā' va jhāyanti* — khīnamacche'va pallaṁë.

11. *Acaritvā brahma-cariyām* — aladdhā yobbane dhanaṁ
   *Senti cāpātikhīnā'va* — pūrañāni anutthunam.

**THEY REPENT WHO DO NOT PROGRESS MATERIALLY AND SPIRITUALLY**

10. They who have not led the Holy Life, who in youth have not acquired wealth, pine away like old herons at a pond without fish.

11. They who have not led the Holy Life, who in youth have not acquired wealth, lie like worn-out bows, sighing after the past.

**Story**

A millionaire's son, owing to bad company, squandered all his wealth and was reduced to penury. Concerning his sad plight the Buddha uttered these verses.
Chapter 12

ATTA VAGGA
THE SELF

1. *Attānam ce pīyām jaññā —
rakkheyya nam surakkhitam
Tiṃṇam aṅnataram yānām —
 paṭijaggeyya pāṇḍito.*  

BE VIGILANT

1. If one holds oneself dear, one should protect oneself well. During every one of the three watches the wise man should keep vigil.  

Story

A royal couple was childless. The Buddha declared that their childlessness was due to their not having led a harmless and heedful life in a previous birth. Advising them to be vigilant, He uttered this verse.
1. According to Buddhism there is no permanent soul or unchanging entity (*atta*) either created by a God or emanating from a Paramātma. Here the term *atta* (self) is applied to the whole body, or one’s personality, or mind, or life flux.

2. *Attānam eva paṭhamañ ca paṭirūpe nivesaye*  
   *Ath' aṇṇam anusāseyya na kilisseyya paṇḍito.*  

**ADVISERS SHOULD SET THE EXAMPLE FIRST**

2. Let one first establish oneself in what is proper, and then instruct others. Such a wise man will not be defiled.¹

---

**Story**

A greedy monk who was a good preacher went from monastery to monastery, preaching the Dhamma and greedily gathering the gifts offered to him. One day two young monks could not divide between themselves two robes and a costly blanket. This greedy preacher settled the dispute by giving a robe to either of them and himself taking the blanket. The matter was reported to the Buddha. Thereupon the Buddha spoke on the desirability of the advisers themselves setting the example first.

1. Will not be blamed by others.
THE SELF

3. Attānam ce tathā kayirā
   yathaṅnamanusāsati
   Sudanto vata dammetha
   attā hi kira duddamo. 159.

ACT AS YOU INSTRUCT

3. As he instructs others so should he himself act. Himself fully controlled, he should control (others); for oneself, indeed, is difficult to control. 159.

Story

A monk advised others to practise meditation with earnestness, but he himself was heedless, sleeping in the night as he liked. The Buddha advised instructors to act according to their own instruction.

4. Attā hi attano nātho
   ko hi nātho para siyā
   Attanā' va sudantiena
   nātham labhati dullabhām. 160.

SELF IS ONE'S REFUGE

4. Oneself, indeed, is one's saviour, for what other saviour would there be? With oneself well controlled one obtains a saviour difficult to find. 160.
Story

A nun prior to her ordination conceived a child and later gave birth to a son. The King adopted him. Having come of age, the boy became a monk and attained Arahantship. The mother nun could not give up her affection towards her son. One day she casually met him on the street going in quest of alms. She approached him with affection but the son did not return the affection. This unexpected attitude on the part of the son induced her to root out her affection towards him and attain Arahantship. Hearing of her realization, the Buddha explained that one’s saviour or refuge is oneself.

5. Atanā' va katam pāpaṁ —
      attajam attasambhavāṁ
      Abhimanthati dummedham —
      vajirāṁ v'asmamayaṁ maṁ. 161.

ONE IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ONE'S EVIL

5. By oneself alone is evil done; it is self-born, it is self-caused. Evil grinds the unwise as a diamond grinds a hard gem. 161.

Story

A devout layman, hearing the doctrine throughout the night, was washing his face at a pond in the morning. At that time a thief who
THE SELF

was being pursued by others, threw his stolen goods near this man and fled. People, mistaking him for the thief, beat the innocent man to death. Hearing the sad story, the Buddha stated that although the man was absolutely innocent he had experienced such a tragic death owing to a past evil Kamma, and thereafter the Buddha spoke on self-responsibility.

6. \textit{Yassa accantadussiłyam} —
\textit{māluvā sālam iv' otatām}
\textit{Karoti so tatha' tānam} —
\textit{yathā nam icchatī diso.} 162.

THE CORRUPT BRING ABOUT THEIR OWN RUIN

6. He who is exceedingly corrupt, like a \textit{māluvā} creeper strangling a sal tree, does to himself what even an enemy would wish for him. 162.

Story

The Buddha uttered this verse concerning the evil nature of the Venerable Devadatta, who had made several unsuccessful attempts to kill Him.

7. \textit{Sukarāni asādhūni} —
\textit{attano ahitāni ca}
\textit{Yam 've hitaī ca sādhuī ca} —
\textit{tam ve paramadukkaram.} 163.
ATTA VAGGA

EVIL IS EASY BUT GOOD IS DIFFICULT

7. Easy to do are things that are hard and not beneficial to oneself, but very, very difficult, indeed, to do is that which is beneficial and good. 163.

Story

This verse was uttered by the Buddha when He heard that the Venerable Devadatta had decided to cause a schism in the Order.

8. Yo sāsanam arahatam ariyānaṁ dhammajīvinam Paṭikkosati dummedho diṭṭhim nissāya pāpikāṁ Phalāni kaṭṭhakass' eva attaghaññāya phallati. 164.

SCORN NOT THE NOBLE

8. The stupid man, who, on account of false views, scorns the teaching of the Arahants, the Noble Ones, and the Righteous, ripens like the fruit of the kāśta reed, only for his own destruction. 164.

Story

A jealous monk tried to dissuade his woman supporter from hearing the Dhamma from the Buddha. In spite of his attempts at dissuasion the woman went to see the Buddha. The monk, hearing
of her visit, went to the Buddha and suggested that He modify His sermon and preach on charity and morality. The Buddha, perceiving his bad intention, uttered this verse.

9. *Attanā' va katam pāpaṁ*  
   *attanā samkilissati*  
   *Attanā akatam pāpaṁ*  
   *attanā' va visujjhati*  
   *Suddhi asuddhi paccattam*  
   *n' ānño aññaṁ visodhaye.*  

---

**PURITY AND IMPURITY DEPEND ON ONESELF**

9. By oneself, indeed, is evil done; by oneself is one defiled. By oneself is evil left undone; by oneself, indeed, is one purified. Purity and impurity depend on oneself. No one purifies another.  

---

**Story**

A devout layman, having listened to the doctrine throughout the night, went in the morning to a pond to wash his face. At that moment a thief, who was being pursued by people, threw his stolen goods near him and fled. People molested him mistaking him for the thief. Some courtesans, who were passing that way, saved him. Hearing the story, the Buddha uttered this verse.
STRIVE FOR YOUR SPIRITUAL WELFARE

10. For the sake of others’ welfare, however, great, let not one neglect one’s own welfare. Clearly perceiving one’s own welfare, let one be intent on one’s own goal.

Story

As the Buddha was about to pass away His disciples flocked from far and near to pay their last respects to Him. A monk named Attadattha, instead of joining them, retired to his cell and meditated. The other monks reported this matter to the Buddha. When questioned as to his conduct, the monk replied. “Lord, as you would be passing away three months hence I thought the best way to honour you would be by attaining Arahantship during your lifetime itself.” The Buddha praised him for his exemplary conduct and remarked that one’s spiritual welfare should not be abandoned for the sake of others.
THE SELF

1. Here "welfare" denotes one's ultimate goal, i.e., Nibbāna.

Personal sanctification should not be sacrificed for the sake of external homage.

One must not misunderstand this verse to mean that one should not selflessly work for the weal of others. Selfless service is highly commended by the Buddha.
Chapter 13

LOKA VAGGA
THE WORLD

1. *Himaṁ dhammaṁ na sevyya —
   āmādēna na samvase.*
   *Micchādiṭṭhim na sevyya —
   na siyā lokavaddhano.*  

GIVE UP BASE DESIRES

1. Do not serve mean ends. Do not live in heedlessness. Do not embrace false views. Do not be a world-upholder.  

Story

A young novice was offended at being called a shaveling. Nobody was able to pacify him. The Buddha adopted a conciliatory attitude and won his heart. On that occasion the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. That is, sensual pleasures.
2. By being subject to repeated births and deaths.
THE WORLD

2. Uttiṭṭhe nappamajjeya —
    dhammam sucaritam care

    Dhammacārī sukham seti —
    asmīn loke āparamhi ca. 168.

3. Dhammam care sucaritam —
    na nam duccaritam care

    Dhammacārī sukham seti —
    asmīn loke āparamhi ca. 169.

THE RIGHTOUS ARE HAPPY
BE RIGHTOUS

2. Be not heedless in standing¹ (at people’s doors for alms). Observe (this) practice scrupulously. He who observes this practice lives happily both in this world and in the next. 168.

3. Scrupulously observe (this) practice. Do not observe it unscrupulously. He who observes this practice lives happily both in this world and in the next. 169.

Story

On the day after His arrival in His birthplace Kapilavatthu immediately after His Enlightenment, the Buddha went in quest of alms in the city. King Suddhodana, His father, hearing that his son was begging alms in the city, indignantly ran up to Him and said that He was disgracing him by begging alms in the streets where He formerly used to travel in golden palanquins. Thereupon the
Buddha remarked that it was the custom of His predecessors to go seeking alms from door to door, and He uttered these verses.

1. This translation is according to the commentary, but owing to the ambiguity of the first word it may be translated, "be alert, be not heedless", etc.

4. Yathā bubbulakām ṭasse  
vathā ṭasse maricikām
Evam lokam avekkhantam  
maccurājā na ṭassati.

LIKE A BUBBLE IS THIS WORLD

4. Just as one would look upon a bubble, just as one would look upon a mirage—if a person thus looks upon the world, the King of Death sees him not.

Story

Reflecting on a mirage and on bubbles of water, many monks attained Arahantship. Concerning their attainment, the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. This psycho-physical organism is to be regarded as being as empty as a bubble and as
THE WORLD

illusion as a mirage. The wise man who could so regard it would end the ills of life.

5. *Etha passath' imam lokam* —
    *cittam rājarathūpamām*

*Yattha bālā visidanti* —
    *naththi sāngo vijānatam.*

__________________________________________________________________________

THE WISE ARE NOT ATTACHED TO THE WORLD

5. Come, behold this world¹ which is like unto an ornamented royal chariot, wherein fools flounder, but for the wise there is no attachment.

__________________________________________________________________________

Story

A prince was grieved to hear of the death of a nautch girl who used to delight him by dancing and singing. He went to the Buddha seeking consolation. The Buddha comforted him and uttered this verse.

__________________________________________________________________________

¹. This body, composed of the five Aggregates.

6. *Yo ca pubbe pamajjijtavā* —
    *pacchā so nappamajjati*

*So imam lokam pabhāseti* —
    *abbhā mutto' va candimā.*

__________________________________________________________________________

165
THE HEEDFUL ILLUMINE THE WORLD

6. Whoever was heedless before and afterwards is not; such a one illumines this world like the moon freed from clouds.  

---

Story

A monk was constantly sweeping the rooms of the monastery. As advised by an Arahant he meditated and eventually attained Arahantship. Concerning his change of attitude, the Buddha uttered this verse.

---

7. Yassa pāpaṁ katam kammanṁ kusalena pithiyati  
So imañ lokam pabhāseti abbhā mutto' va candimā.  

---

EVIL CAN BE ERASED BY GOOD

7. Whoever, by a good deed,¹ covers the evil done,² such a one illumines this world like the moon freed from clouds.  

---

Story

Angulimāla, a notorious murderer, was converted by the Buddha. Later, he not only became a very compassionate monk but also attained Arahantship and passed away into
THE WORLD

Nibbāna. The monks wished to know how such a murderer could have become an Arahant. In reply the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. By the Path of Arahantship.
2. One has to reap the effects of one’s Kamma. But one is not bound to reap the effects of all actions one has done in the course of Samsāra. If one were, an escape from birth and death would be impossible. At times it is possible to obliterate one’s evil kamma by performing powerful good kamma.

8. Andabhūto ayaṁ loko
   tanuk’ettha vipassati
Sakunto jālamutto 'va
   appo saggāya gacchati.

FEW ARE THE CLEAR-SIGHTED

8. Blind is this world. Few are those who clearly see. As birds escape from a net few go to a blissful state.¹

Story

The devout daughter of a weaver came to hear the Buddha and answered four enigmatic questions put to her by the Buddha which the audience could not understand. The Buddha explained the matter and uttered this verse.

1. Sagga—blissful states, not eternal heavens.
THE WISE SEEK AN ESCAPE FROM THIS WORLD

9. Swans wing along on the path of the sun. (Men) go through air by psychic powers. The wise are led away from the world, having conquered Mara and his host.

Story

Some monks came to see the Buddha and, hearing the Dhamma, attained Arahantship with psychic powers. Later, they departed flying through the air. The Venerable Ananda, who had seen them coming, noticed their absence and inquired of the Buddha where they had gone. Just at that moment some swans flew through the air. Then the Buddha remarked that Arahants, who possess psychic powers, go through the air like swans.

1. *Iddhi*. By mental development it is possible to fly through the air, walk on water, dive into the earth, etc. Such kinds of powers are psychic and supernormal, but not miraculous. 2. That is, the Arahants attain *Parinibbāna* without coming into birth again.

10. Ekam dhammam alitassa —
       musāvādissa jantuno

Vitiṇṇaparalokassa
       naiṭhi pāpaṁ akāriyam. 176.

---

THERE IS NO EVIL THAT A LIAR CANNOT COMMIT

10. There is no evil that cannot be done by the liar, who has transgressed the one law (of truthfulness) and who is indifferent to a world beyond. 176.

---

Story

A vicious woman feigned pregnancy and in the Hall of Truth publicly accused the Buddha as having being responsible for her condition. People discovered the truth. Concerning her false accusation, the Buddha uttered this verse.
LOKA VAGGA

Ch. 13

1. An untruthful person, devoid of self-respect, who has no belief in an after life and who has no fear for the attendant consequences of evil, is liable to commit any evil. Such a person does not see earthly bliss or heavenly bliss or Nibbānic bliss (Commentary).

II. Na ve kadariyā devalokam vajanti —
    bālā have nappasaṁsanti dānam
Dhīro ca dānam anumoḍamāno —
    ten'eva so hoti sukhi paratiha. 177.

THE STINGY ARE NOT HAPPY

II. Verily, misers go not to the celestial realms. Fools do not indeed praise liberality.

The wise man rejoices in giving and thereby becomes happy thereafter. 177.

Story

A King spent a large sum of money in giving alms to the Buddha and the Order. One minister was displeased about it and another was full of joy. Taking into consideration their contrary attitudes, the Buddha addressed this verse to the King.

12. Pathavyā ekarajjena —
    saggassa gamanena vā
Sabbalokādhipaccena —
    sotāpatti-phalam varam. 178.

160
THE WORLD

SPIRITUAL ADVANCEMENT IS BETTER THAN WORLDLY SOVEREIGNTY

12. Better than absolute sovereignty\(^1\) over the earth, better than going to heaven, better than even lordship over all the worlds is the Fruit of a Stream-Winner.\(^2\) r78.

Story

Anāthapiṇḍika, the millionaire, induced his son to hear the Dhamma from the Buddha, offering him a thousand pieces of money. Tempted by the reward, he saw the Buddha, heard the Dhamma, and became a Stream-Winner. Thereupon the Buddha commented on the superiority of spiritual advancement over all worldly possessions.

1. Internal purification is far superior to fleeting worldly possessions of transitory heavenly bliss.

2. Sotāpatti. Here Sota means the stream that leads to Nibbāna. It is the noble Eightfold Path. “Ā” means for the first time. “Patti” means attainment. Sotāpatti means the attainment of the stream for the first time. It is the realization of Nibbāna for the first time. This is the first stage of Sainthood. The Stream-Winners are not born in woeful states, but the worldly great are not exempt from them.

161
Chapter 14
BUDDHA VAGGA
THE BUDDHA

1. Yassa jītāṁ n’ āvajīyati —
   jītamassa no yāti koci loke
Tam buddhāham anantagocaram —
apadam kena ādrena nessatha 179.

2. Yassa jālinī visattikā —
tanha natthi kuhiṅci netave
Tam buddhāham anantagocaram —
apadam kena ādrena nessatha. 180.

———

THE BUDDHA CANNOT BE FATHOMED

1. Whose conquest (of passion) is not turned into defeat,\(^1\) no conquered (passion) of his in this world follows him\(^2\)—that trackless\(^3\) Buddha of infinite range,\(^4\) by which way will you lead him?

———

THE BUDDHA IS PASSIONLESS

2. Him in whom there is not that entangling,\(^5\) embroiling craving to lead (to any life), him the

162
trackless Buddha of infinite range,—by which way will you lead him? 180.

Story

Māgandiyā, a lovely maiden, was presented by her father to the Buddha to serve as His wife. The Buddha uttered these verses to show that He had not been tempted even when the three daughters of Māra, the Evil One, made a vain attempt to entice Him by their female charms.

1. As the Buddha had eradicated all passions of lust, hatred, and delusion they could not arise in Him any more. His spiritual victory was unconquerable.
2. Because the eradicated passions do not arise again.
3. Since the Buddha is devoid of the tracks (pada) of lust, hatred, and delusion.
4. Being omniscient.
5. Of lust, hatred, and delusion.
6. Nessatha = will lead to temptation by bringing under the sway of the tempters.

3. Ye jhānapasutā dhīrā — nekkhammūpasame ratā
   Devā' pi tesam pihayanti —
   sambuddhānām satīmatam. 181.
BUDDHAS ARE DEAR TO ALL

3. The wise ones who are intent on meditation,¹ who delight in the peace of renunciation² (i.e., Nibbāna), such mindful perfect Buddhas even the gods hold (most) dear. 181.

Story

The Buddha went to Tāvatimsa heaven to expound the Abhidhamma to the devas. There His mother, reborn as a deva in the Tusita heaven, came to hear the Dhamma. At the end of three months when the Buddha returned to earth, accompanied by the devas, the Venerable Sāriputta remarked that even the devas seek the guidance of the Buddha. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Here Jhāna means both concentration (samatha) and insight (vipassanā).
2. Nekkhamma implies Nibbāna, which is gained by the subjugation of passions.

4. Kiccho manussapaññābhābhō — kicchaṁ maccāna jīvitāṁ
   Kicchaṁ saddhammasaṇānam — kiccho buddhānam uppādo. 182.

THE GOOD ARE RARE

4. Rare is birth as a human being. Hard is the life of mortals. Hard is the hearing of the Sublime Truth. Rare is the appearance of the Buddhas. 182.
THE BUDDHA

Story

The Buddha uttered this verse concerning a monk who was reborn as an animal.

5. Sābba pāpasa akaraṇaṁ —
   kusalassu upasampadā
   Sacittaparīyodapanaṁ —
   etam Buddhāna sāsanam. 183.

6. Khanti paramāṁ tapo titikkhā —
   nibbānāṁ paramāṁ vadanti buddhā
   Na hi pabbajito parūpaghāti —
   samaṇo hoti param viheṭhayanto. 184.

7. Anūpavādo anūpaghāto —
   ātimokkhe ca saṁvaro
   Mattaṁũtā ca bhāttasmiṁ —
   panthaṁ ca sayanāsanaṁ
   Adhicitte ca āyogo —
   etam Buddhāna sāsanam. 185.

DO GOOD AND BE GOOD

5. Not to do any evil,¹ to cultivate good, to purify one’s mind,—this is the Teaching of the Buddhas.² 183.

NON-VIOLENCE IS THE CHARACTERISTIC OF AN ASCETIC

6. Forbearing patience is the highest austerity. Nibbāna is supreme, say the Buddhas.
He, verily, is not a recluse who harms another. Nor is he an ascetic who oppresses others. r84.

---

LEAD A PURE AND NOBLE LIFE

7. Not insulting, not harming, restraint according to the Fundamental Moral Code, moderation in food, secluded abode, intent on higher thoughts,—this is the Teaching of the Buddhas. r85.

---

Story

When questioned by the Venerable Ānanda as to how the previous Buddhas had observed the Uposatha (Holy Day), the Buddha replied that all the Buddhas had recited these three verses in admonition.

---

1. What is associated with the three immoral roots of attachment (lobha), illwill (dosa), and delusion (moha) is evil. What is associated with the three moral roots of generosity (alobha), goodwill or loving-kindness (adosa), and wisdom (amoha) is good.

2. The religion of the Buddha is summarised in this verse.

3. Pabbajito, one who casts aside his impurities, and has left the world.

4. Samāna, one who has subdued his passions, an ascetic.
THE BUDDHA

5. *Pātimokkha*, these are the 220 chief rules (excluding the seven ways of settling disputes) which every bhikkhu is expected to observe.

6. *Adhicitta*,—namely, the eight attainments (*aṭṭhasāmpatti*), the four *rupa jhānas* and the four *arūpa jhānas*. They are higher stages of mental concentration which enable one to gain supernormal powers.

8. *Na kāhāpanavassena* —
   *titī kāmesu vijjati*

   *Appassādā dukkā kāmā* —
   *iti viñṇāya pañdito.*

9. *Api dibbesu kāmesu* —
   *ratiṁ so n’ādhipacetatī*

   *Taṅkhakhayarato hoti* —
   *sammāsambuddhasāvako.*

8-9. Not by a shower of gold coins does contentment arise in sensual pleasures. Of little sweetness, and painful, are sensual pleasures. Knowing thus, the wise man finds no delight even in heavenly pleasures. The disciple of the Fully Enlightened One delights in the destruction of craving.

INSATIATE ARE SENSUAL PLEASURES

86-187.

Story

A discontented monk desired to leave the Order, hoping to live on the meagre possessions left by his father. The Buddha explained that no satisfaction can arise in sense-desires.
10. To many a refuge fear-stricken men betake themselves—to hills, woods, groves, trees, and shrines.

11. Nay, no such refuge is safe, no such refuge is supreme. Not by resorting to such a refuge is one freed from all ill.
THE BUDDHA

12-13-14. He who has gone for refuge to the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Sangha, sees with right knowledge the four Noble Truths—Sorrow, the Cause of Sorrow, the Transcending of Sorrow and the Noble Eightfold Path which leads to the Cessation of Sorrow.

This, indeed, is refuge secure. This, indeed, is refuge supreme. By seeking such refuge one is released from all sorrow. 190, 191, 192.

Story

A teacher of an alien sect instructed his disciples to seek refuge in mountains and forests to get rid of suffering. The Buddha spoke on the efficacy of the Three Refuges for deliverance from suffering.

1. One's best refuge is oneself. A Buddhist seeks refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha as the Teacher, the Teaching and the Taught in order to gain his deliverance from the ills of life. The Buddha is the supreme teacher who shows the way to deliverance. The Dhamma is the unique way. The Sangha represents the Taught who have followed the way and have become living examples. One formally becomes a Buddhist by intelligently seeking refuge in this Triple Gem (Tisavana). A Buddhist does not seek refuge in the Buddha with the hope that he will be saved by a personal act of deliverance. The
confidence of a Buddhist in the Buddha is like that of a sick person in a noted physician, or of a student in his teacher.

15. *Dullabho purisājañño* —
    *na so sabbattha jāyati*

*Yattha so jāyati dhīro* —
    *tam kulam sukhamedhati.*

193.

---

**THE NOBLE ARE RARE**

15. Hard to find is a man of great wisdom: such a man is not born everywhere. Where such a wise man is born, that family thrives happily.

193.

---

**Story**

The Venerable Ānanda wished to know from the Buddha where noble personages like the Buddhas are born. In reply the Buddha uttered this verse.

---

1. That is, a Buddha.

16. *Sukho buddhānaṁ uppādo* —
    *sukhā saddhommadesanā*

*Sukhā saṅghassa sāmaggī* —
    *sammaggānam tapo sukho.*

194.
THINGS THAT TEND TO HAPPINESS

16. Happy is the birth of Buddhas. Happy is the teaching of the sublime Dhamma. Happy is the unity of the Sangha.\(^1\) Happy is the discipline of the united ones.

---

Story

When the monks were discussing which things tend to happiness the Buddha uttered this verse.

---

1. Sangha is the oldest, democratically constituted, historic celibate Order, founded by the Buddha. Strictly speaking, the Sangha denotes those noble disciples who have realized the four Paths and four Fruits. The ordinary bhikkhus of the present day are merely their representatives.

---

17. Pūjārahe pūjayato
    buddhe yadi va sāvake
    Papañcasamatikkante
tinnasokapariddave.

18. Te tādise pūjayato
    nibbute akutobhaye
    Na sakkā puññam saṅkhārum
    im' ettam'iti kena ci.
HONOUR TO WHOM HONOUR IS DUE

17-18. He who reverences those worthy of reverence, whether Buddhas or their disciples; those who have overcome the impediments\(^1\) and have got rid of grief and lamentation,—the merit of him who reverences such peaceful\(^2\) and fearless Ones\(^3\) cannot be measured by anyone as such and such. \(^{195,196}\)

Story

While the Buddha was dwelling at an old shrine a brahmin came to see Him and worshipped at the shrine. The Buddha admonished him that it was more commendable to reverence the Pure Ones.

---

1. *Pāpañca* = impediments or obstacles such as attachment, false views and pride.
2. Those who have extinguished the fire of lust.
3. The Passionless are fearless.
Chapter 15

SUKHA VAGGA
HAPPINESS

1. Susukham vata jivāma — verinesu averino
   Verinesu manussesu — viharāma averino. 197.

2. Susukham vata jivāma
   āturesu anāturā
   Āturesu manussesu — viharāma anāturā. 198.

3. Susukham vata jivāma — usuksesu anussukā
   Ussukesu manussesu — viharāma anussukā. 199.

AMONGST THE HATEFUL BE WITHOUT HATE
AMONGST THE SICK BE IN GOOD HEALTH
AMONGST THE PASSIONATE BE WITHOUT PASSION

1. Ah, happily do we live without hate amongst the hateful; amidst hateful men we dwell unhating.

173
2. Ah, happily do we live in good health\(^1\) amongst the ailing; amidst ailing men we dwell in good health. 198.

3. Ah, happily do we live without yearning (for sensual pleasures) amongst those who yearn (for them); amidst those who yearn (for them) we dwell without yearning. 199.

---

**Story**

A quarrel arose between two tribes with regard to the waters of a boundary river. The Buddha admonished them to live without hate.

---

1. Free from the disease of passions.

---

4. *Susukham vata jīvāma*  
   *yesaṁ no natthi kiṁcaṇanām*  
   *Pitibhakkhaṁ bhaviṣsāma*  
   *devā ābhassaraṁ yathā.* 200.

---

**BE WITHOUT IMPEDIMENTS**

4. Ah, happily do we live, we who have no impediments.\(^1\) Feeders of joy shall we be even as the gods of the Radiant Realm. 200.

---

**Story**

One day the Buddha went to a village in quest of alms. Owing to the intervention of Māra, the
HAPPINESS

Evil One, the Buddha could not obtain any food. To Māra, who queried whether He was hungry, the Buddha explained the mental attitude of those who are free from impediments.

---

1. *Kiñcana*, such as lust, hatred, and delusion which are hindrances to spiritual progress.

---

5. *Jayam veram paśavatī — dukkham seti parājīto*

*Upasanto sukham seti — hitvā jaya-parājayaṁ.* 201.

---

VICTORY BREEDS HATRED

5. Victory breeds hatred. The defeated live in pain. Happily the peaceful live, giving up victory and defeat.

---

Story

A King was sad because he had been thrice defeated in battle. The Buddha commented on the evil consequences of both defeat and victory.

---

7. *Natthi rāgasamo aggi — natthi dosasamo kali*

LUST IS A FIRE

6. There is no fire like lust, no crime like hate. There is no ill like the body,¹ no bliss higher than Peace (Nibbāna).

Story

Celebrating the marriage of a young woman, her family invited the Buddha and the Sangha to the house for alms. While watching the bride serving the Buddha and His disciples with alms, lust arose in the mind of the bride-groom. The Buddha, perceiving his thoughts, uttered this verse.

1. Pañcakkhandha the five Aggregates.

7. Jighacchā paramā rogā —
   samkhārā paramā dukhā
   Etam ātavā yathābhūtam —
   nibbānam paramam sukham. 203.

HUNGER IS THE GREATEST AFFLICTION

7. Hunger¹ is the greatest disease. Aggregates² are the greatest ill. Knowing this as it really is, (the wise realize) Nibbāna, bliss supreme. 203.

Story

A poor farmer came to hear the Buddha in a state of hunger. Before preaching the Buddha
HAPPINESS

requested the steward to give some food to the hungry man. Some monks were indignant at the Buddha’s action. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Ordinary diseases are usually curable by a suitable remedy, but hunger has to be appeased daily.

2. Here saṁkhāra is used in the sense of khandha, the five Aggregates—namely, the body (rūpa) feeling (vedanā), perception (saññā), mental states (saṁkhārā), and consciousness (viññāna). The so-called being is composed of these five constituent parts. Both khandha and saṁkhāra are used to denote these five conditioned things. Excluding feeling and perception, the remaining fifty mental states are implied by the term saṁkhāra in the five Aggregates.

8. Ārogyaparamā lābhā
   santuṭṭhi paramam dhanam
Vissāsaparamā ṇāti
   nibbānam paramam sukham. 204.

HEALTH IS PARAMOUNT

8. Health is the highest gain. Contentment is the greatest wealth. The trusty are the best kinsmen. Nibbāna is the highest bliss. 204.
Story

Owing to over-eating a King used to suffer. On the advice of the Buddha he ate moderately and became healthy. When the King mentioned that his health had improved the Buddha described four sources of happiness.

1. Whether related or not.

9. *Pavivekarasāṁ pītvā* —
   *rasaṁ upasamassa ca*

*Niddaro hoi nippāpo* —
   *dhammaṁ pīthirasāṁ pibam.*

HAPPY IS HE WHO TASTES THE FLAVOUR OF TRUTH

9. Having tasted the flavour of seclusion and the flavour of appeasement,¹ free from anguish and stain becomes he, imbibing the taste of the joy of the Dhamma.

Story

Hearing that the Buddha would soon pass away, a monk meditated in solitude without joining the other monks in paying their respects to the Buddha. When questioned by the Buddha as to his attitude he replied that he was striving hard to
attain Arahantship before the Buddha passed away. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. *Upasama*, the bliss of Nibbāna resulting from the subjugation of passions.

10. *Sādhu dassanam āriyānam* —
    *sannivāso sadā sukhā*

    *Adassanena bālānām* —
    *niccam eva sukhī siyā.*

11. *Bālasaṅgatacāri hi*
    *dīgham addhāna socati*

    *Dukkho bālehi samvāso* —
    *amitten’ eva sabbadā.*

    *Dhīro ca sukhasaṁvāso* —
    *nātīnam’ va saṁāgamo.*

    *Tasmā hi:-*

12. *Dhīraṁ ca paṁnaṁ ca bahussutaṁ ca*
    *dhorayhasilam vatavantam āriyām*

    *Tam tādisam sappurisam sumedham* —
    *bhajetha nakkhattapatham’va candimā.*

---

**BLESSED IS THE SIGHT OF THE NOBLE SORROWFUL IS ASSOCIATION WITH THE FOOLISH ASSOCIATF WITH THE WISE**

10. Good is the sight of the Ariyas: their company is ever happy. Not seeing the foolish, one may ever be happy.
11. Truly, he who moves in company with fools grieves for a long time. Association with the foolish is ever painful as with a foe. Happy is association with the wise, even like meeting with kinsfolk.

12. Therefore:-

With the intelligent, the wise,\(^1\) the learned,\(^2\) the enduring,\(^3\) the dutiful\(^4\) and the Ariya\(^5\)—with a man of such virtue and intellect should one associate, as the moon (follows) the starry path.

---

**Story**

Once when the Buddha was unwell Sakka, King of the gods, assuming a human form, came to attend on the Buddha. The monks expressed surprise at the exemplary attitude of Sakka. Thereupon the Buddha uttered these verses.

---

1. *Paññam* = possessed of mundane and supra-mundane knowledge (Commentary).
2. *Bahussutam* = endowed with the teaching and the realization (Commentary).
3. *Dhorayhasilam* = literally, engaged in the bearing of the yoke (leading to Nibbāna) (Commentary).
4. *Vatavantam* = replete with morality (*Sīla*) and ascetic practices (*Dhutaṅga*).
5. Far removed from passions.
Chapter 16

PIYA VAGGA
AFFECTION

1. Ayoge yuñjam attānāṃ —
yogasmiṃ ca ayojayaṃ
Atthāṃ hitvā piyaggāhī —
pihet' attānuyogināṃ. 209.

2. Mā piyehi samāgañchi —
appiyehi kudācanāṃ.
Piyānaṃ adassanaṃ dukkhaṃ —

3. Tasmā piyaṁ na kayirātha —
piyāpāyo hi pāpāko
Ganthā tesam na vijjanti —
yesāṃ natthi piyāppiyam. 211.

AVOID THAT WHICH SHOULD BE SHUNNED

1. Applying oneself to that which should be avoided, not applying oneself to that which should be pursued, and giving up the quest, one who goes after pleasure envies them who exert themselves. 209.

GIVE UP BOTH WHAT IS DEAR AND NOT DEAR

2. Consort not with those that are dear, never with those that are not dear; not seeing
PIYA VAGGA

those that are dear and seeing those that are not dear, are both painful. 210.

HOLD NOTHING DEAR

3. Hence hold nothing dear, for separation from those that are dear is bad; bonds do not exist or those to whom naught is dear or not dear. 211.

Story

A youth, beloved by his parents, entered the Order without their approval. Later, the parents also entered the Order. Yet they could not live separated from one another, and could not give up their affection. Hearing their story, the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. That is, frequenting places undesirable for bhikkhus.
2. That is, right attention (yoniso manasikāra).
3. The practice of higher Morality, Concentration, and Insight.
4. The bhikkhu, with no right discrimination, gives up his quest, and being attached to sensual pleasures, returns to lay life. Later, he sees successful bhikkhus and envies them.
5. Applicable to both animate and inanimate objects, pleasant persons or things.
6. Attachment in one case and aversion in the other.
4. Piyato jāyati soko —
   piyato jāyati bhayaṃ
Piyato vippamuttassa —
   natthi soko kuto bhayaṃ. 212.

4. From endearment springs grief, from endearment springs fear; for him who is wholly free from endearment there is no grief, much less fear. 212.

Story

A father was grieving over the death of his son. The Buddha visited him and consoled him, reciting this verse.

5. Pemato jāyati soko —
   pemato jāyati bhayaṃ
Pemato vippamuttassa —
   natthi soko kuto bhayaṃ. 213.

GRIEF SPRINGS FROM AFFECTION

5. From affection springs grief, from affection springs fear; for him who is wholly free from affection there is no grief, much less fear. 213.

Story

Visākhā lost a beloved grand-daughter. When she visited the monastery the Buddha consoled her, reciting this verse.
6. *Ratiyā jāyati soko* —
   *ratiyā jāyati bhayaṁ*
   *Ratiyā vippamuttassa* —
   *natthi soko kuto bhayaṁ.*  214.

**GRIEF SPRINGS FROM ATTACHMENT**

6. From attachment springs grief, from attachment springs fear; for him who is wholly free from attachment there is no grief, much less fear.  214.

---

**Story**

Some princes, becoming jealous of one another, fell to fighting over a courtesan. The Buddha spoke on the evil consequences of attachment.

7. *Kāmato jāyati soko* —
   *kāmato jāyati bhayaṁ*
   *Kāmato vippamuttassa* —
   *natthi soko kuto bhayaṁ.*  215.

---

**GRIEF SPRINGS FROM LUST**

7. From lust springs grief, from lust springs fear; from him who is wholly free from lust there is no grief, much less fear.  215.

---

**Story**

A misogynistic prince later fell in love with his beautiful bride-elect, whom he had not yet
 AFFECTION

seen. As she was being brought to be given in marriage to the prince, she died unexpectedly. The prince was overcome with grief. Consoling him, the Buddha uttered this verse.

8. Taṇhāya jāyati soko  
   taṇhāya jāyati bhayam
Taṇhāya vippamuttiassa  
   natthi soko kuto bhayam.  

GRIEF SPRINGS FROM CRAVING

8. From craving springs grief, from craving springs fear; for him who is wholly free from craving there is no grief, much less fear.  

Story

A brahmin ploughed his field and told the Buddha, who visited him daily, that he would share the harvest with the Buddha. Unfortunately an unexpected storm destroyed the crop and the brahmin was sorry that he could not keep his promise. The Buddha visited him and consoling him, spoke on the nature of craving.

9. Siladassanasampannam  
   dharmattham saccavedinam
   Attano kammakubbānam  
   tam jano kurute piyam.  

185
THE VIRTUOUS ARE DEAR TO ALL

9. Whoso is perfect in virtue,¹ and insight,² is established in the Dhamma,³ has realized the Truths,⁴ and fulfils his own duties,⁵—him do folk hold dear. 217.

Story

Some youths carrying cakes went past the Buddha and the Sangha, making no offering to them. In the rear they saw the Venerable Kassapa. Taking a liking to him, they offered him some cakes. The Venerable Kassapa advised them to offer some to the Buddha and the Sangha, who were sitting by the wayside. The monks were indignant, remarking that it was favouritism. Thereupon the Buddha declared that the Venerable Kassapa was dear even to the gods and uttered this verse.

1. Four kinds of morality.
2. Connected with the supramundane Paths and Fruits.
4. *Saccavedinam*, “speaketh truth” (Mrs. Rhys Davids). The four Noble Truths are implied here.
5. The three modes of discipline, Morality (*Sīla*), Concentration (*Samādhi*), and Wisdom (*Paññā*).

10. *Chandajāto anakkhāte* manasā ca phuto siyā
    Kāmesu ca appaṭibaddhacitto —
    uddhamsotoṭi vuuccati. 218.

186
THE NON-ATTACHED GO UPSTREAM

10. He who has developed a wish for the Undeclared¹ (Nibbāna), he whose mind is thrilled (with the three Fruits),² he whose mind is not bound by material pleasures, such a person is called an “Upstream-bound One”.³

Story

Some pupils inquired of their preceptor, who had attained Ánāgāmi (Never-Returner), whether he had attained any stage of Sainthood. The preceptor did not answer the question as even lay followers could become Ánāgāmis. He waited until he would attain Arahantship. Unfortunately he died and was reborn in a Pure Abode (Suddhāvāsa) where Never-Returners seek birth until they attain Arahantship. The pupils went to the Buddha weeping. The Buddha remarked that death was inevitable. They replied that they were sorry as the preceptor had died without answering their question. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Ánakkhāta—Nibbāna. It is so called because it should not be said that Nibbāna was created by any or that it is of some such hue as blue etc. (Commentary).
2. The first three stages of Sainthood. Sotāpatti, Sakadāgāmi, and Ánāgāmi.
3. The reference is to the Ánāgāmis (Never-Returners) who, after death, are born in the Pure Abodes. They are not born in the sense-sphere as they have eradicated sense-desires.
Piya Vagga

11. Cirappavāsīṁ purisam -
   dūrato sotthim āgatam

   Ānātimittā suhajjā ca -
   abhinandanti sāgatam.

12. Tath' eva katapuññam ṗī -
   asmā lokā āram gatam

   Puṇṇāni paṭīgāṇhanti -
   ṗiyam nālim' va āgatam.

—

Merit Welcomes the Doers of Good

11. A man long absent and returned safe from afar, his kinsmen, friends, and well-wishers welcome on his arrival.

12. Likewise, his good deeds will receive the well-doer who has gone from this world to the next, as kinsmen will receive a dear one on his return.

Story

A devout and wealthy person performed many good deeds. A place in a celestial plane was ready to receive him even before his death. The Buddha uttered these verses, commenting on his good deeds and his future state.
Chapter 17

KODHA VAGGA
ANGER

1. Kodham jahe vippajakeyya mānam — saññojanam sabbam atikkameyya
Tam nāmārūpasmini asajjamānaṁ — akiñcanam nānupatanti dukkha.221.

———

GIVE UP ANGER

1. One should give up anger. One should abandon pride. One should overcome all fetters.
    Iulls never befall him who clings not to mind and body and is passionless. 221.

———

Story

The Venerable Moggallāna’s sister, who was suffering from a skin disease, on her brother’s advice erected an Assembly Hall. Soon she recovered. The Buddha attributed her skin disease to anger and uttered this verse.

———

2. Yo ve uţpatitam kodham — ratham bhantam’va dhāru,.
Tam aham sārathim brūmi — rasmiggāho itaro jano. 222.

———

189
CONTROL YOUR ANGER

2. Whoso checks his uprisen anger as though it were a rolling chariot, him I call a true charioteer. Other charioteers are mere rein-holders. 222.

Story

A monk, while cutting down a tree to make a lodging for himself, accidentally injured the offspring of a tree spirit. She grew angry and wanted to kill him, but on later reflection controlled her uprisen anger. She reported the matter to the Buddha, who praised her and uttered this verse.

3. Akkhena jine kodhahm —
asadhuhm sadhunah jine

Jine kadariyam danena —
saccena alikavadinam. 223.

OVERCOME ANGER BY LOVE


Story

The junior mistress of a husband grew jealous of the senior mistress and did a great wrong to her, but the latter did not get angry. Later, the former repented and sought pardon from the latter.
ANGER

She replied that she would pardon her if she would implore pardon from the Buddha. This she did, and the Buddha admonished them.

4. Saccam bhaṇe na kujjheyya
dajjā pāpasim pi yācito
Etehi tihi thānehi
gacche devāna santike. 224.

BE TRUTHFUL, PATIENT AND GENEROUS

4. One should utter the truth. One should not be angry. One should give even from a scanty store to him who asks. Along these three paths one may go to the presence of the gods. 224.

Story

The Venerable Moggallāna inquired of the devas what meritorious acts had led to their rebirth in such a celestial realm. They mentioned the trifling acts done by them involving such virtues as truthfulness, patience, generosity, etc. When the Venerable Moggallāna wished to know from the Buddha whether trifling good acts could produce rebirth in a heaven the Buddha uttered this verse in explanation.

5. Ahiṁsakā ye munayo
   niccam kāyena saṁvutā
Te yanti accutam thānam
   yatiha gantvā na socare. 225.

191
KODHA VAGGA

Ch. 17

THE HARMLESS ATTAIN THE DEATHLESS

5. Those sages who are harmless, and are ever restrained in body, go to the deathless state (Nibbāna), whither gone they never grieve. 225.

Story

A brahmin and his wife greeted the Buddha as their son. The Buddha attributed this intimacy to past association. Hearing the Dhamma, they attained Arahantship. After their death the monks wished to know in what state they would be reborn. As they passed into Nibbāna the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Speech and thoughts are also herein implied.

6. Sadā jāgaramānānām —
    ahorattānusikkhinaṁ
    Nibbānam adhimuttānām —
    attham gacchanti āsavā. 226.

THE EVER VIGILANT GIVE UP DEFILEMENTS

6. The defilements of those who are ever vigilant, who discipline themselves day and night, who are wholly intent on Nibbāna, are destroyed. 226.

Story

A servant maid, having worked hard until late at night, stepped out of the house and noticed
some monks moving about on a neighbouring mountain. She thought to herself, "I cannot sleep as I am too tired, but why can't the monks sleep?" Later, the Buddha met her and explained to her the reason why monks keep awake at night.

1. There are four kinds of difilements or corruptions (Āsavas), namely, sensual pleasures (kāma), becoming (bhava), false views (diṭṭhi), and ignorance (avijjā). The first āsava is attachment to Sense Sphere, the second is attachment to the Realms of Form and the Formless Realms.

7. Porāṇam etanī atula
   n'etaṁ ajjatanām īva
   Nindanti tuṁhim āsīnām
   nindanti bahūbhāṇinām
   Mitabhāṇinam pi nindanti
   nāthi loke anindito. 227.

8. Na cāhu na ca bhavissati
   na c'etarāhi vijjati
   Ekantāṁ nindito poso
   ekantāṁ vā pāsamsito. 228.

9. Yaṁ ce viṁṇu pāsamsanti
   anuvicca suve suve
   Acchiddavuttīṁ medhāvinī
daṁāsīlasamāhitam. 229.

10. Nekkham jambonadass' eva
    ko tāṁ ninditum arahati
    Devā'pi tam pāsamsanti
    brahmunā'pi pāsamsito. 230.
THERE IS NONE WHO IS BLAMELESS IN THIS WORLD

7. This, O Atula,¹ is an old saying; it is not one of today only: they blame those who sit silent, they blame those who speak too much. Those speaking little too they blame.

There is no one who is not blamed in this world. 227.

THERE IS NONE WHO IS WHOLLY BLAMED OR PRAISED

8. There never was, there never will be, nor does there exist now, a person who is wholly blamed or wholly praised. 228.

THE BLAMELESS ARE PRAISED

9. Examining day by day, the wise praise him who is of flawless life, intelligent, endowed with knowledge and virtue. 229.

WHO DARE BLAME THE PURE?

10. Who deigns to blame him who is like a piece of refined gold? Even the gods praise him; by Brahma too he is praised. 230.

Story

A lay leader of a group named Atula wished to hear the Dhamma from the Venerable Revata. He remained silent as he was bent on solitude. Displeased, he went to the Venerable Sâriputta,
who discoursed at length on Abhidhamma. Displeased again, he went to the Venerable Ānanda, who delivered a brief discourse. Displeased with him too, he finally approached the Buddha, who thereupon uttered these verses and remarked that even a Buddha is not free from blame.

1. Atula is the name of a person.

II. Kāyappakopam rakkheyya —
   kāyena samvuto siyā
Kāyaduccaritaṁ hitvā —
   kāyena sucaritaṁ care. 231.

12. Vacippakopam rakkheyya —
    vācāya samvuto siyā
Vaciduccaritaṁ hitvā —
    vācāya sucaritaṁ care. 232.

13. Manopakopam rakkheyya —
    manasā samvuto siyā
Manoduccaritaṁ hitvā —
    manasā sucaritaṁ care. 233.

14. Kāyena samvutā dhīrā —
    atho vācāya samvutā
Manasā samvutā dhīrā —
    te ve suparisaṁvutā. 234.

BE PURE IN DEED, WORD AND THOUGHT

1. One should guard against misdeeds (caused by) the body, and one should be restrained in body. Giving up evil conduct in body, one should be of good bodily conduct. 231.
12. One should guard against misdeeds (caused by) speech, and one should be restrained in speech. Giving up evil conduct in speech, one should be of good conduct in speech. 232.

13. One should guard against misdeeds (caused by) the mind, and one should be restrained in mind. Giving up evil conduct in mind, one should be of good conduct in mind. 233.

14. The wise are restrained in deed; in speech, too, they are restrained. The wise, restrained in mind, are indeed those who are perfectly restrained. 234.

Story

Some monks moved about wearing wooden sandals, thus creating a great noise. Advising them to be controlled in thought, word and deed, the Buddha uttered these verses.
Chapter 18

MALA VAGGA
IMPURITIES OR TAINTS

1. Paṇḍupalāso' va' dāni' si —
   yamaṇḍulisā' pi ca tam upaṭṭhitā
   Uyyogamukhe ca tiṭṭhasi —
   pātheyyam pi ca te na vijjati. 235.

2. So karohī dīpam attano —
   khippayāma pāṇḍito bhava
   Niddhantamalo anaṅgano —
   dibbaṁ ariyabhūmim ehisi. 236.

3. Upanītavayo va'dāni'si —
   sampayāto'si yamassa santike
   Vāso' pi ca te natthi antarā —
   pātheyyam pi ca te na vijjati. 237.

4. So karohī dīpam attano —
   khippayāma pāṇḍito bhava
   Niddhantamalo anaṅgano —
   na pūna jātijarāṁ upehişi. 238.

DEATH IS NEAR TO YOU

1. Like a withered leaf are you now. The messengers of death wait on you. On the threshold of decay you stand. Provision too there is none for you. 235.
STRIVE HARD

2. Make an island unto yourself. Strive quickly; become wise. Purged of stain and passionless, you shall enter the heavenly stage of the Ariyas.¹

LIFE COMES TO AN END

3. Your life has come to an end now. To the presence of death you are setting out. No halting place is there for you by the way. Provision too there is none for you.

BE PASSIONLESS

4. Make an island unto yourself. Strive without delay; become wise. Purged of stain and passionless, you will not come again to birth and old age.

Story
A father-in-law grew old without doing any good. His son-in-law invited the Buddha and the Sangha to the house and gave alms in his name. Thereupon the Buddha addressed these verses to the old man in admonition.

1. Namely, the Pure Abodes (Suddhāvāsa).

5. Anupubbenā medhāvi —
   thokathokam khoṣe khoṣe
   Kammāro rajatass' eva —
   niddhame malam attano.

236. 237. 238. 239.
PURITY YOURSELF GRADUALLY

5. By degrees, little by little, from time to time, a wise person should remove his own impurities, as a smith removes (the dross) of silver. 239.

Story

A devout person, realizing the inconveniences caused to monks while wearing robes in a grassy plot of land, started erecting a hall for the purpose. Having, completed his good work little by little, he invited the Buddha and the Sangha to an alms-giving and related the history of the gradual development of the hall. The Buddha praised him and preached on the gradual removal of one's impurities.

6. *Ayasā' va malāṁ samuṭṭhitam* —
   *taduṭṭhāya tam'eva khādati*

   *Evaṁ atidhonacārinam* —
   *sakakammāni nayanti duggatīṁ.* 240.

ONE'S Evil RUINS ONESELF

6. As rust sprung from iron eats itself away when arisen, even so his own deeds lead the transgressor\(^1\) to states of woe. 240.

Story

A young monk stricken with indigestion died with a strong feeling of attachment to his new robe. Revealing his destiny, the Buddha discoursed on the baneful consequences of craving.
1. Atidhonacāri = the bhikkhu who lives without reflecting on the necessaries of life. While using the four requisites, namely, robes, food, drink and lodging, a bhikkhu is expected to reflect on their special usefulness and loathsomeness. If he does not, he transgresses a minor rule by not using them properly. Dhona means the four necessaries.

7. Aṣajjhāyamalā mantā —
   anutthānamalā gharā
   Malam vanṇassa kosajjam —
   pāmādo rakkhato malam. 241.

CAUSES OF STAIN

7. Non-recitation is the rust of incantations;¹ non-exertion is the rust of homes;² sloth is the taint of beauty; carelessness is the flaw of a watcher. 241.

Story

A monk was jealous of the praise accorded to the two chief disciples for their exposition of the Dhamma. He claimed equal proficiency in preaching, but when called upon to show his capability he failed to do so. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

¹. Mantā mean religious doctrines, arts and sciences. Non-recitation of the scriptures and non-practice of the arts tend to make one forget them.

². Gharā is interpreted as householders.
8. *Mal' itthiyā duccaratām* —
*maccheram dādata malām*

*Malā ve pāpakā dhammā* —
*asmin loke pāramhi ca.*

9. *Tato malā malataram* —
*avijjā pāramām malām*

*Etam malam pāhaivāna* —
*nimmalā hota bhikkhavo.*

---

**TAINTS ARE EVIL THINGS**
**IGNORANCE IS THE GREATEST TAINT**

8. Misconduct is the taint of a woman. Stinginess is the taint of a donor. Taints, indeed, are all evil things both in this world and in the next. 242.

9. A worse taint than these is ignorance, the greatest taint. Abandoning this taint, be taintless, O Bhikkhus! 243.

---

**Story**

A newly married young man was disappointed with his young wife who proved to be an adulteress. When the youth mentioned this matter to the Buddha He uttered these verses.

---

10. *Sujīvam ahiṁkena* —
*kākasūreṇa dhamśinā*

*Pakkhandinā pagabbhena* —
*samkiliṭṭhena jīvitaṁ.*

11. *Hirīmatā ca dujjivān* —
*niccaṁ sucigavesinā*

*Alīnen' appagabhena* —
*suddhājivena pāsatā.*

---

201
IT IS EASY TO LEAD A SHAMELESS LIFE
IT IS HARD TO LEAD A MODEST LIFE

10. Easy is the life of a shameless one who is as impudent as a crow, back-biting, presumptuous, arrogant, and corrupt. 244.

11. Hard is the life of a modest one who ever seeks purity, is detached, humble, clean in life, and reflective. 245.

Story

A young monk offered some choice food to another monk and promised to offer such food whenever be obtained it. The latter, however, departed without even thanking him for the offer. Hearing the story, the Buddha commented on courtesy and rudeness.

12. Yo pāṇam atipāteti
   musāvādaṁ ca bhāsati
   Loke adinnaṁ ādiyati
   paradāraṁ ca gacchati. 246.

13. Surāmerayaḥ pānaṁ ca
    yo naro anuyuñjati
    Idh’ evam eso lokasmim
    mūlaṁ khaṇati attano. 247.

14. Evan bho purisa jāṇāhi
    pāpadhammā asaññatā
    Mā tam lobho adhammo ca
    ciram dukkhaṁya raddhayum. 248.
IMPURITIES OR TAINTS

HE WHO DOES NOT OBSERVE THE FIVE
PRECEPTS RUINS HIMSELF
BE NOT AVARICIOUS AND DO NO WRONG

12-13. Whoso in this world destroys life, tells lies, takes what is not given, goes to others' wives, and is addicted to intoxicating drinks, such a one digs up his own root in this world. 246-247.

14. Know thus, O good man: "Not easy of restraint are evil things". Let not greed and wickedness drag you to protracted misery. 248.

Story

Many followers each of whom was observing one of the five precepts spoke to the difficulty of practising their respective precepts. Hearing their story, the Buddha spoke of the difficulty of practising them all without stating a single one as of lesser importance.

1. Adhammo is here used in the sense of hatred. The root causes of evil are greed and hatred.

15. Dadāti ve yathāsaddham —
   yathāpasādanam jano
   Tattha yo maṅku bhavati —
   pāresam pānabhojane
   Na so divā vā rattim vā —
   samādhim adhigacchati. 249.

16. Yassa c'etam samucchinnam —
    mūlaghaccam samūhataṁ
    Sa ve divā vā rattim vā —
    samādhim adhigacchati. 250.
THE ENVIOUS ARE NOT AT PEACE
THE UNENVIOUS ARE AT PEACE

15. People give according to their faith and as they are pleased. Whoever therein is envious of others' food and drink, gains no peace either by day or by night. 249.

16. But he who has this (feeling) fully cut off, uprooted and destroyed, gains peace by day and by night. 250.

---

Story

A novice, son of a gate-keeper, spoke disparagingly of all the devotees except his own kinsfolk as regards their generosity. Some inquisitive monks made investigations about his so-called relatives and discovered the truth. When they informed the Buddha about his mean behaviour the Buddha spoke on the mental attitude of the envious and the unenvious.

---

1. Samādhi, mundane or supramundane concentration.

---

17. Natthi rāgasamo aggi —

natthi dosasamo gaho

Natthi mohasamam jālam —

natthi taṅhāsamā nadi. 251.

---

204
IMPURITIES OR TAINS

THERE IS NO RIVER LIKE CRAVING

17. There is no fire like lust, no grip like hate, no net like delusion, no river like craving.

Story

Once the Buddha was preaching the Dhamma to six persons. Five were inattentive, and only one was attentive. The Buddha attributed their inattentiveness to their past tendencies. When the Venerable Ānanda inquired the reason the Buddha replied that it was due to their respective lust, hatred, ignorance, and craving.

18. Sudassam vajjam aññesaṁ —
    attano pana duddasam
Paresam hi so vajjānī —
    opuṇāti yathā bhusam
Attano pana chādeti —
    kalim' va katavā saṭho.

EASY TO SEE ARE OTHERS’ FAULTS

18. Easily seen are others’ faults, hard indeed to see are one’s own. Like chaff one winnows others’ faults, but one’s own (faults) one hides, as a crafty Fowler conceals himself by camouflage.

Story

A wealthy person who desired to see the Buddha was dissuaded from meeting Him by the
other ascetics, speaking in dispraise of Him. Hearing of it, the Buddha remarked that some find in others faults that do not exist, but fail to see their own faults.

1. Kalim = attabhāva = body.
2. Kitavā = kitavāya = by means of sham branches etc.

19. Paravajjānupassissa
   niccam ujjhānasāññino
   Āsavā tassa vaḍḍhanti
   ārā so āsavakkhayā.

DEFILEMENTS MULTIPLY IN THOSE WHO SEEK OTHERS’ FAULTS

19. He who sees others’ faults, and is ever irritable,—the corruptions of such a one grow. He is far from the destruction of corruptions.1 253.

Story

The Buddha uttered this verse concerning a monk who was always seeking others’ faults.

1 Namely, the Fruit of Arahantship. See note on v. 226.
20. Ākāse pādam natthi
   samaṇo natthi bāhire
Paṇcābhīratā pājā
   nippaṇcā tathāgatā. 254

21. Ākāse pādam natthi
   samaṇo natthi bāhire
Saṃkhārā sassatī natthi
   natthi buddhānam īnjitam. 255

OUTSIDE THERE ARE NO
SAINTS WHO HAVE REALISED NIBBANA
THERE ARE NO
AGGREGATES WHICH ARE ETERNAL

20. In the sky there is no track. Outside there is no Saint. Mankind delights in obstacles. The Tathāgatas are free from obstacles. 254.

21. In the sky there is no track. Outside there is no Saint. There are no conditioned things that are eternal. There is no instability in the Buddhas. 255.

Story

As the Buddha was about to pass away Subhadda, a wandering ascetic, approached the Buddha and wished to know about ascetics and teachers who belonged to other orders. In reply the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. Outside the Dispensation (sāsana) of the Buddha.
2. Here *samana* refers to Saints who have realized the four Paths and four Fruits. They are the Ariya Saints who have attained Nibbāna.

3. Impediments such as craving, pride, etc.

4. An epithet of the Buddha. Literally, it means "who thus hath come".

5. *Saṅkhāra* means the five aggregates conditioned by causes.

6. There is no single impediment such as craving, pride and so on, by means of which the Buddhas regard the conditioned things as eternal.
Chapter 19

DHAMMAṬṬHA VAGGA
THE JUST OR RIGHTOUS

1. Na tena hoti dhammaṭṭho
   yen' attham sahasā naye
   Yo ca attham anatthaṇ ca
   ubho niccheyya paṇḍito. 256.

2. Asāhasena dhammena
   samena nayati pare
   Dhammassa gutto medhāvī
   dhammaṭṭho' ti pavuccati. 257.

THE JUST SHOULD MAKE A PROPER INVESTIGATION
THE IMPARTIAL ARE CALLED THE TRUE JUSTICES

1. He is not thereby just because he hastily arbitrates cases. The wise man should investigate both right and wrong. 256.

2. The intelligent person who leads others not falsely but lawfully and impartially, who is a guardian of the law, is called one who abides by the law (dhammaṭṭha). 257.
Story

Some monks observed that certain judges accepted bribes and adjudged cases unjustly. Hearing this matter, the Buddha described the state of a true justice.

3. Na tēna ṭhān̄ito hoti
    yāvatā bahu bhāsati
Khami averī abhayo
    ṭhān̄ito’ti āvo uccati. 258.

### ONE IS NOT DEEMED WISE BECAUSE ONE IS GARRULOUS

3. One is not thereby a learned man merely because one speaks much. He who is secure, without hate, and fearless is called "learned". 258.

Story

A group of six monks went about calling themselves wise and thus creating disorder. The Buddha uttered this verse in explanation.

Na tāvatā dharmadharo
    yāvatā bahu bhāsati
Yo ca appam pi sutvāna
    dhammam kāyena passati
Sa ve dharmadharo hoti
    yo dhammam nappamajjati. 259.
THE JUST OR RIGHTEOUS

GARRULOUSNESS IS NOT A CHARACTERISTIC OF ONE WHO KNOWS THE DHAMMA

4. One is not versed in the Dhamma merely because one speaks too much. He who hears little and sees the Dhamma mentally, and who does not neglect the Dhamma, is, indeed, versed in the Dhamma.

Story

A monk who knew only one verse was living in a forest. He used to recite it on the Holy days. The deities applauded him. Two other monks, who were versed in the Dhamma, came to the same forest and preached the Dhamma, but there was no applause from the deities. Displeased they went away and reported to the Buddha the attitude of the deities. The Buddha uttered this verse in explanation.

1. Kāyena—that is, nāmakāyena, through the mental body, or, in other words, through self-realization.

5. Na tena ther ro hoti
   yen’ assa palitam siro
   pariṭakko vayo tassa
   moghajjano’ ti vuccati.

6. Yamhi saccaṁ ca dhammo ca
   ahimsā saññamo damo
   Sa ve vantamalo dhīro
   ther ro iti pavuccati.

211
GREY HAIR ALONE MAKES NOT A THERA
HE IS A THERA WHO IS STAINLESS

5. He is not thereby an elder (thera) merely because his head is grey. Ripe is he in age. "Old-in-vain" is he called.

6. In whom are truth, virtue, harmlessness, restraint and control, that wise man who is purged of impurities, is, indeed, called an elder.

Story

Some monks were offended when the Buddha referred to a monk who appeared to be a young novice as a therā. The Buddha uttered this verse in explanation.

1. Therā—a term applied to those bhikkhus who have counted at least ten years in the Order from the date of their higher ordination. Therā, literally, means one who is firm or stable.
2. Saccam—the four noble truths.
3. Dhammo, the nine supramundane states.
4. Saññamo, morality and sense-restraint.
5. By means of the four Paths.

7. Na vākkaraṇamattena
   vannapokkharatāya vā
   Sādhurūpo naro hoti
   issuki macchari sātho.

260. 261. 262.
8. Yassa c'etami samucchinnami —
mūlghaccami samūhatam
Sa vantadoso medhāvi —
sādhuṇāpo' ti vuccati. 263.

NOT BY HANDSOME APPEARANCE DOES ONE BECOME GOOD-NATURED
GOOD-NATURED IS HE WHO HAS GIVEN UP JEALOUSY ETC.

7. Not by mere eloquence, nor by handsome appearance, does a man become good-natured, should he be jealous, selfish, and deceitful. 262.

8. But in whom these are wholly cut off, uprooted and extinct, that wise man who is purged of hatred, is, indeed, called good-natured. 263.

Story

Some young monks and novices demonstrated their respect towards their respective teachers. Some elderly monks who were eloquent preachers grew jealous of it. With a base motive they approached the Buddha and suggested that He advise those young monks not to rehearse the Dhamma without being corrected by them. The Buddha, understanding their base intentions, uttered these verses.
9. Na munda\u0b80\u0b89\u0b1f\u0b4^\u0b02 samano abbato alik\u0b08\u0b1f\u0b4^\u0b02 bha\u0b01\u0b07\u0b1f\u0b42\u0b02
   Icchalo\u0b02\u0b02bhasamapa\u0b02\u0b08\u0b1f\u0b42\u0b02
   samano k\u0b02\u0b04\u0b02 k\u0b04\u0b1f\u0b42 bhavissati.

10. Yo ca sameti \u0b09\u0b01\u0b08\u0b1f\u0b42\u0b02
    a\u0b02\u0b04\u0b08\u0b1f\u0b42 thul\u0b02\u0b1f\u0b42 sabbaso
    Samitt\u0b02\u0b05\u0b02 \u0b09\u0b01\u0b08\u0b1f\u0b42\u0b02
    samano\u0b02\u0b02\u0b02 ti pavuccati.

A SHAVEN HEAD DOES NOT MAKE ONE A MONK

9. Not by a shaven head does an undisciplined man,\(^1\) who utters lies, become a monk. How will one who is full of desire and greed be a monk? 264.

HE IS A MONK WHO HAS OVERCOME EVIL

10. He who wholly subdues evil deeds both small and great, is called a monk because he has overcome all evil. 265.

Story

A certain monk, when defeated in argument, would invite his opponent to meet in an appointed place at an appointed time to resume the discussion. He would then go to the appointed place before the appointed time and declare that the absence of the opponent meant acknowledgement of defeat. When this matter was reported to the Buddha He explained the attitude of a true monk.
THE JUST OR RIGHTEOUS

1. He who does not practise higher morality (sīla) and austerities (dhutānga).

II. Na tena bhikkhu hoti —
   yāvatā bhikkhate pare
   Vissam dhammaṁ samādāya —
   bhikkhu hoti na tāvatā. 266.

12. Yo’ dha puññaṁ ca pāpaṁ ca —
   bāhetvā brahmacariyavā
   Saṅkhāya loke carati —
   sa ve bhikkhū’ti vuccati. 267.

ONE DOES NOT BECOME A BHikkhu
MERELY BY BEGGING
HE WHO IS HOLY IS CALLED A BHikkhu

11. He is not thereby a bhikkhu merely because he begs from others; by following the whole code (of morality) one certainly becomes a bhikkhu and not (merely) by such begging. 266.

12. Herein he who has transcended both good and evil, whose conduct is sublime, who lives with understanding in this world, he, indeed, is called a bhikkhu. 267.

Story

A brahmaṇ retired from the world and was living the life of an ascetic in an alien order begging food. He saw the Buddha and requested Him to address him as bhikkhu as he also was begging
food. The Buddha answered that one does not become a bhikkhu merely by begging food.

1. Bhikkhu, literally, means "he who begs" but bhikkhus do not beg. They silently stand at the door for alms. They live on what is spontaneously given by the supporters. See note on v. 31.

2. Vissam dhamman = visamam dhamman, vissam gandham vā kāyakammādikam dhamman (commentary). Vissam has two meanings (1) whole or all, and (2) bad smell. The commentary gives only the latter in this case.

"He is not a mendicant simply because he begs others (for alms). He who adopts the whole law is a mendicant, not he who adopts only a part". Radhakrishnan.

The context makes the verse clear. The brahmin who had adopted the ascetic life claimed the right to be called a bhikkhu simply because he begged his food as is the custom of the disciples of the Buddha although he did not observe the other practices of a bhikkhu.

Vissam dhamman could therefore be interpreted as "the whole code of morality pertaining to the life of a bhikkhu".

216
THE JUST OR RIGHTEOUS

13. *Na monena muni hoti* —
    mūlharūpo aviddasu
*Yo ca tulam'va pāggyaha* —
    varam ādāya paṇḍito.* 268.

14. *Pāpāni parivajjeti* —
    sa muni tena so muni
*Yo munāti ubho loke* —
    muni tena pavuccati. 269.

SILENCE ALONE DOES NOT MAKE A SAGE
BY SUPPRESSING EVIL ONE
BECOMES A SAGE

13. Not by silence (alone) does he who is
dull and ignorant become a sage; but that wise
man who, as if holding a pair of scales, embraces
the best¹ and shuns evil, is indeed a sage. 268.

14. For that reason² he is a sage. He who
understands, both worlds³ is, therefore, called a
sage. 269.

Story

After finishing a meal non-Buddhist ascetics
used to offer merit to the donors, but the Buddha’s
disciples used to depart in silence. People were
offended by this seeming discourtesy. The Buddha
thereupon enjoined the bhikkhus to offer merit.
Then the ascetics were silent but found fault
with the bhikkhus for discourse at length. There-
upon the Buddha explained the attitude of a
true sage.
1. Such as morality, concentration, wisdom etc.
2. That is, for having embraced the best and abandoned evil.
3. Internal and external Aggregates.

15. *Na tena ariyo hoti* —
   *yena pānāni hiṁsatī*
   *Ahimsā sabbapāṇānam* —
   *ariyo’ ti pavuccati.*

---

**BY HARMLESSNESS ONE BECOMES A NOBLE (ARIYA)**

15. He is not therefore an Ariya (Noble) in that he harms living beings; through his harmlessness towards all living beings is he called an Ariya (Noble).

---

**Story**

A man named Ariya (Noble) was fishing. The Buddha told him that one did not become an Ariya by harming others.

16. *Na sīlabbatamattena* —
   *bāhusaccena vā puna*
   *Atha vā samādhilābhena* —
   *vivicca sayanena vā.*

17. *Phusāmi nekkhammasukhaṁ* —
   *aputhujjanasevitam*
   *Bhikkhu vissāsam āpādi* —
   *appaito āsavakkhayam.*

---
THE JUST OR RIGHTEOUS

A BHIKKHU SHOULD NOT BE CONTENTED UNTIL HE DESTROYS ALL PASSIONS

16-17. Not only by mere morality and austerities¹ nor again by much learning,² nor even by developing mental concentration, nor by secluded lodging, (thinking) "I enjoy the bliss of renunciation not resorted to by the worldling"³ (not with these) should you, O bhikkhu, rest content⁴ without reaching the extinction of the corruptions.⁵

271-272.

Story

Some monks who had attained various spiritual heights did not strive to become Arahants, thinking that they could become Arahants at any time. The Buddha advised them not to be contented until they had reached their ultimate Goal (Arahantship).

1. The four kinds of higher morality observed by bhikkhus and the thirteen kinds of higher ascetic practices (dhutāṅga) (commentary).
2. That is, the Tipitaka (commentary).
3. Anāgāmi stage (commentary).
5. That is, Arahantship.
Chapter 20

MAGGA VAGGA
THE WAY OR THE PATH

1. Maggān’ aṭṭhaṅgiko sēṭṭho
   saccānam cato ro padā
   Virāgo sēṭṭho dhammānam
   dīpādanañ ca cakkhumā. 273.
2. Eso’va maggo natth' añño
   dassanassa visuddhiyā
   Etamhi tumhe paṭi-pajjatha
   mārass' etam paṭohanañ. 274.
3. Etamhi tumhe paṭipannā
   dukkha sāntaṃ karissathā
   Akkhāto ve mayā maggo
   aññaṣa salla nanthanam. 275.
4. Tumhehi kiccaṃ ātappaṃ
   akkhātāro tathāgatā
   Paṭipannā paṭomokkhanti
   jhāyino mārabandhanā. 276.

THE EIGHT FOLD PATH IS THE BEST
FOLLOW THIS PATH FOR PURITY
FOLLOWING THIS PATH YOU CAN PUT
AN END TO SUFFERING
YOU MUST EXERT YOURSELVES

1. The best of paths is the Eightfold Path.¹
The best of truths are the four Sayings.² Non-
attachment\textsuperscript{3} is the best of states. The best of bipeds is the Seeing One. 273.

2. This is the only Way. There is none other for the purity of vision. Do you follow this path. This is the bewilderment of Māra. 274.

3. Entering upon that path, you will make an end of pain. Having learnt the removal of thorns,\textsuperscript{4} have I taught you the path. 275.

4. Striving should be done by yourselves; the Tathāgatas\textsuperscript{5} are only teachers. The meditative ones, who enter the way, are delivered from the bonds of Māra. 276.

Story

When the Buddha returned to the monastery after his preaching tours some bhikkhus were discussing the smooth or the rough state of the paths they had trod. The Buddha remarked that those paths were irrelevant to their emancipation and advised them to follow the Eightfold path.

1. The Eightfold Path is the Middle Way discovered by the Buddha for the realization of Nibbāna. It consists of right understanding (sammā diṭṭhi), right thoughts (sammā saṁkappa), right speech (sammā vācā), right action (sammā kammanta), right livelihood (sammā ājīva), right effort (sammā vāyāma), right mindfulness (sammā sati), and right concentration (sammā samādhi). This is the unique path of Enlightenment. From a philosophical stand-point these eight factors are the eight mental states found in the supra-
mundane consciousness which has Nibbāna for its object.

2. They are the four Noble Truths—suffering, the cause of suffering, the destruction of suffering and the path leading to the destruction of suffering. The first truth of suffering is to be comprehended, the cause of suffering (which is craving) is to be eradicated, the destruction of suffering (which is Nibbāna) is to be realized, the path leading to the destruction of suffering (which is the Eightfold Path) is to be developed. Whether the Buddhas arise or not these four truths exist in the world. It is the Buddhas that reveal them to mankind.

3. Virāga = Nibbāna.

4. Of lust etc.

5. That is, to control passions in order to realize Nibbāna.

6. When the Buddha refers to Himself He employs the term Tathāgata which means “who thus hath come”.

5. Subbe saṅkhārā aniccā’ti —
yadā paññāya āpattat
Atha nibbindati dukkhe —
esa maggo visuddhiyā.

TRANSIENT ARE CONDITIONED THINGS

5. Transient are all conditioned things:¹ when this, with wisdom, one discerns, then is one disgusted with ill;² this is the path to purity.

277.
THE WAY OR THE PATH

Story

The Buddha, perceiving that many monks had meditated on impermanence in the past, advised them to continue that meditation.

1. *Saṅkhāra* is a multisignificant term. Here it is used in the sense of things conditioned by causes. Supramundane Nibbāna is not included in *saṅkhāra* as it is not conditioned by any cause. It is causeless and timeless.

2. Suffering caused by attending to the five Aggregates.

6. *Sabbe saṅkhārā dukkha’ti* —
yadā paññaṁaya passati
*atha nibbindati dikkhe* —
esa maggo visuddhiya.

SORROWFUL ARE ALL CONDITIONED THINGS

6. “Sorrowful are all conditioned things”: when this, with wisdom, one discerns, then is one disgusted with ill; this is the path to purity. 278.

Story

The Buddha, perceiving that many monks had meditated on sorrow in the past, advised them to continue that meditation.
EVERYTHING IS SOULLESS

7. “All Dhammas are without a soul”:\(^1\) when this, with wisdom, one discerns, then is one disgusted with ill; this is the path to purity. 279.

Story

The Buddha, perceiving that many monks had meditated on non-soul in the past, advised them to continue that meditation.

1. Impermanence (anicca), sorrow (dukkha) and no-soul (anattā) are the three characteristics of all things conditioned by causes. It is by contemplating them that one realizes Nibbāna. The aspirant may choose any characteristic that appeals to him most.

Anattā or no-soul is the crux of Buddhism. The term saṅkhāra which is applied to any conditioned thing is used in the two previous verses, while in the third verse the term dhamma is used. The commentator interprets dhamma as the “aggregates” (khandhā). The same interpretation he gives to saṅkhāra too. If by dhamma is meant saṅkhāra, there is no reason for the Buddha to make a differentiation in the third verse.

224
THE WAY OR THE PATH

Sankhāra is applied only to those things conditioned by causes. Dhamma can be applied to both conditioned and unconditioned things and states. It embraces both conditioned and unconditioned things including Nibbāna. In order to show that even Nibbāna is free from a permanent soul the Buddha used the term dhamma in the third verse. Nibbāna is a positive supramundane state and is without a soul.

"All the elements of being are non-self. When one by wisdom realizes (this), he heeds not (is superior to) (this world of) sorrow", this is the path to purity". Radhakrishnan.

8. Uṭṭhānakālamhi anuṭṭhāno —
   yuvā balī ālasiyam upeto
Samānasaṅkappamano kusito —
   paññāya maggam alaso na vindati. 280.

THE SLOTHFUL DO NOT REALIZE THE PATH

8. The inactive idler who strives not when he should strive, who, though young and strong, is slothful, with (good) thoughts depressed,¹ does not by wisdom realize the Path. 280.

Story

Many fellow monks, excluding one who remained behind in the monastery, went to the forest and attained Arahantship. When they returned the Buddha exchanged friendly greetings
with them but not with the one who had remained behind. This action of the Buddha stimulated him to strive to attain Arahantship. He strove hard in the night but unfortunately met with an accident which brought his fellow monks to attend on him. The Buddha commented on the difficulty of realization by an idler.

\[1. \textit{Samsānasamīkappamano}, \text{literally, mind with right thoughts depressed.}\]

\[9. \textit{Vācānurakkhi manasā susaṃvuto} \quad \text{kāyena ca akusalarāṇa kaiyirā} \]
\[\text{Ete tayo kampamāte visodhaye} \quad \text{—} \]
\[\text{ārādhaye maggam isippaveditaṁ.} \quad 281.\]

\[\text{PURIFY THOUGHTS, WORDS AND DEEDS}\]

9. Watchful of speech, well restrained in mind, let him do nought unskilful through his body. Let him purify these three ways of action and win the path realized by the sages. 281.

\[\text{Story}\]

A monk, having divided by slander two monks who were friends, was reborn as a hideous Peta. The Venerable Moggallāna saw him and mentioned it to the Buddha, who also had seen him on an earlier occasion. The Buddha thereupon commented on the evil consequences of slandering.
THE WAY OR THE PATH

10. Yogā ve jāyati bhūri —
    ayoṅga bhūrisaṅkhayo

Etam dvedhā patham ṇatvā
    bhavāya vibhavāya ca

Tath’ attānaṁ niveseyya —
    yathā bhūri pavaḍḍhati.

ACT IN SUCH A WAY THAT YOU INCREASE YOUR WISDOM

10. Verily, from meditation arises wisdom. Without meditation wisdom wanes. Knowing this twofold path of gain and loss, let one so conduct oneself that wisdom may increase.

Story

A monk, named Poṭhila, though well versed in the Dhamma, was constantly addressed by the Buddha as “Empty Poṭhila” in order to stimulate him to attain Arahantship. The monk took the hint and went to a distant place to meditate. Accepting the advice of a young novice, he meditated in order to attain Arahantship. The Buddha, perceiving him with His Divine Eye, projected His image before him and uttered this verse.

11. Vanam chindatha mā rukkham —
    vanato jāyati bhayam

Chetvā vanaṅ ca vanathaṅ ca —
    nibbanā hota bhikkhavo.

283.
12. Yāvan hi vanatho na chijjati — anumatto' pī narassa nārisu
   Paṭibaddhamanvo va tāva so — vaccho khirāpakō' va mātari. 284.

BE WITHOUT ATTACHMENT
MIND IS IN BONDAGE AS LONG AS THERE IS ATTACHMENT

11. Cut down the forest (of the passions),¹ but not real trees.² From the forest (of the passions) springs fear. Cutting down both forest³ and brushwood (of the passions), be forestless,⁴ O Bhikkhus. 283.

12. For as long as the slightest brushwood (of the passions) of man towards women is not cut down, so long is his mind in bondage, like the milch calf to its mother-cow. 284.

Story

Some old monks wept when an old woman who used to minister unto them died. The Buddha advised them to practise non-attachment.

1. Here vana means forest of such passions as lust, hatred, and delusion.
2. When the Buddha said, "Cut down the forest", some newly ordained monks erroneously gave the expression its literal meaning. The Buddha, reading their thoughts, corrected them, stating that what he meant was not actual trees but passions.

228
THE WAY OR THE PATH

3. *Vana* means big trees and *vanatha* means smaller trees. Here *vana* means the powerful passions and *vanatha* means the lesser passions.

4. Having eradicated all passions by means of the four Paths, be passionless.

13. *Ucchinda sineham attano*

    *kumudam sāradikam' va pāninā*

*Santimaggam eva brūkaya*

    *nibbānaṁ sugatena desitam*  285.

DEVELOP THE PATH OF PEACE

13. Cut off your affection, as though it were an autumn lily, with the hand. Cultivate the very path of peace. Nibbāna has been expounded by the Auspicious One. 285.

Story

A young monk was meditating on the impurities of the body but with no effect. The Buddha, perceiving his disposition, gave him a lotus as a focus for mental concentration. The monk succeeded in his meditation, gained the jhānas and developing his faculties as advised by the Buddha, later attained Arahantship.

14. *Idha vassaṁ vasissāmi*

    *idha hemantagimhisu*

*Iti bālo vicinteti*

    *antarāyam na bujjhati.*  286.
THE IGNORANT REALIZE NOT THE FEAR OF DEATH

14. Here will I live in the rainy season, here in the autumn and in the summer: thus muses the fool. He realizes not the danger (of death). 286.

Story

A merchant with his retinue halted by a river. There was heavy rain and he thought of selling his goods and spending the various seasons there. The Buddha perceived that the man would die in seven days. The Venerable Ānanda called on the merchant and informed him of his impending death. He was filled with remorse and, inviting the Buddha and the Sangha, gave them alms. The Buddha advised him to meditate on death. He did so and later attained the first stage of Sainthood and passed away as predicted.

15. *Tam puttaṃpasuṃmattam* — *byāsattamanasam naram*

*Suttam gāmaṃ mahogho' va* — *maccu ādāya gacchati.* 287.

DEATH SEIZES THE DOTING MAN

15. The doting man with mind set on children and herds, death seizes and carries away, as a great flood (sweeps away) a slumbering village. 287.
THE WAY OR THE PATH

Story

See story under v. 114.

16. Na santi putā tānāya —
   na hitā na' hi bandhavā
   Antakenādhipannassa —
   natthi ṇātisu tāṇatā. 288.

17. Etam athsavasam hitvā —
   pandito silasanuvuto
   Nibbānagamanam maggam —
   khippam eva visodhaye. 289.

——

NO PROTECTION FROM ANY AT THE
MOMENT OF DEATH

16. There are no sons for one’s protection, neither father nor even kinsmen; for one who is overcome by death no protection is to be found among kinsmen. 288.

17. Realizing this fact, let the virtuous and wise person swiftly clear the way that leads to Nibbāna. 289.

——

Story

A woman, named Paṭācārā, lost her near and dear ones under tragic circumstances. She went mad and was running about the streets. The Buddha had compassion on her and consoled her, uttering these verses.
Chapter 21

PAKİṆṆAKA VAGGA
MISCELLANEOUS

I. Mattāsukhapariccāgā
   passe ce vipulām sukham
Caje mattā sukham dhiro
   sampassam vipulaṁ sukham. 290.

GIVE UP THE LESSER HAPPINESS FOR THE
SAKE OF THE GREATER

I. If by giving up a lesser happiness, one may
   behold a greater one, let the wise man give up the
   lesser happiness in consideration of the greater
   happiness. 290.

Story

Once the Buddha was invited to Vesali to
secure for its inhabitants surcease from a visitation
of famine, pestilence, and evil spirits. Many
wonderful things happened when the Buddha
visited the city. He attributed this to His having
done meritorious actions in the past, renouncing
minor pleasures.
NOT HATRED FOR HATRED

2. He who wishes his own happiness by causing pain to others is not released from hatred, being himself entangled in the tangles of hatred.

Story

The mutual hatred of two persons continued through several rebirths. Finally the Buddha reconciled them and their hatred was appeased.
THE DEFILEMENTS OF THE CONCEITED INCREASE

THE DEFILEMENTS OF THE MINDFUL DECREASE

3. What should have been done is left undone,¹ what should not have been done is done.² Of those who are puffed up and heedless the corruptions increase.

4. Those who always earnestly practise “mindfulness of the body”,³ who follow not what should not be done, and constantly do what should be done, of those mindful and reflective ones the corruptions come to an end.

---

Story

Some monks, interested in various kinds of ornamented sandals, neglected their duties as monks. The Buddha rebuked them and uttered these verses.

---

1. Observance of morality, practise of meditation, etc.
2. Such as decoration of umbrellas, sandals, bowls, belts etc.
3. Contemplation on the loathsomeness of the body.

---

5. Mātaram pītaram hantvā —
   rājāno due ca khattiye
   Raṭṭham sānucaṃ hantvā —
   anīgho yāti brāhmaṇo.  

294.
MISCELLANEOUS

6. Mātaram ājīvaḥ hantvā —
   rājānāḥ dve ca sottı̄iya
Veyyagghapaṅcamati hantvā —
   anīgho ānī legend bhāmāno.

ARAHANT GOES UNGRIEVING

5. Having slain mother¹ (craving) and father² (conceit) and two warrior kings (views based on eternalism and nihilism), and having destroyed a country (sense-avenues and sense-objects together with its revenue officer³ (attachment), ungrieving goes the Brāhma (Arahant).

6. Having slain mother and father and two brahmin kings, and having destroyed the perilous path⁴ (hindrances), ungrieving goes the Brāhma (Arahant).

Story

Pointing to an Arahant, who was comparatively short in stature, the Buddha uttered these verses to explain the state of an Arahant.

1. Mātā = (mother) represents craving (tanha) as it produces birth.
2. Piitā = (father) represents "I-conceit".
3. Sānučaram = (revenue officer) here represents clinging to life (nandīrāga).
4. Veyyagghapaṅcamati, this term is used to denote the five hindrances (nīvarana) of which doubt or indecision (vicikicchā) is the fifth.

235
Veyyagga means a perilous path infested with tigers. Doubt is comparable to such a path. (commentary).

The other four hindrances are sense-desires (kāmacchanda), illwill (vyāpāda), restlessness and brooding (uddhacca-kukkucca), and sloth and torpor (thīna-middha).

They are called hindrances because they obstruct the path to heavenly bliss and Nibbāna.

7. Suppabuddham pabujjhanti
   sadā Gotamasāvakā

   Yesam divā ca ratto ca
   niccam buddhagatāsati.

8. Suppabuddham pabujjhanti
   sadā Gotamasāvakā

   Yesam divā ca ratto ca
   niccam dhammagatā sati.

9. Suppabuddham pabujjhanti
   sadā Gotamasāvakā

   Yesam divā ca ratto ca
   niccam saṅghagatā sati.

10. Suppabuddham pabujjhanti
    sadā Gotamasāvakā

    Yesam divā ca ratto ca
    niccam kāyagatā sati.

11. Suppabuddham pabujjhanti
    sadā Gotamasāvakā

    Yesam divā ca ratto ca
    ahimsāya rato mano.
MEDITATE ON THE BUDDHA, DHAMMA, SANGHA, BODY AND HARMLESSNESS SEEK DELIGHT IN MEDITATION

7. Well awakened the disciples of Gotama ever arise—they who by day and night always contemplate the Buddha.¹

8. Well awakened the disciples of Gotama ever arise—they who by day and night always contemplate the Dhamma.²

9. Well awakened the disciples of Gotama ever arise—they who by day and night always contemplate the Sangha³.

10. Well awakened the disciples of Gotama ever arise—they who by day and night always contemplate the body.⁴

11. Well awakened the disciples of Gotama ever arise—they who by day and night delight in harmlessness.

12. Well awakened the disciples of Gotama ever arise—they who by day and night delight in meditation.
Story

A youth escaped from a demon by uttering the words "Praise be to the Buddha". Later, that very demon and another helped him. The King, hearing the story, approached the Buddha and inquired whether meditation on the Buddha would be sufficient to ward off evil spirits. Thereupon the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. Reflection on the virtues of the Buddha, the Enlightened One.
2. Reflection on the virtues of the Dhamma, the Teaching (of the Enlightened One).
3. Reflection on the virtues of the Sangha, the Noble Order of Disciples (of the Enlightened One).
4. Contemplation on the loathsomeness of the body.

13. Duppabbajjam durabhiram —
   durāvāsā gharā dukhā
Dukkho' samānasamvāso —
   dukkhānupatitaddhagū
Tasmā na c'addhagū siyā —
   na ca dukkhānupatito siyā. 302.

HARD IS RENUNCIATION

13. Difficult is renunciation, difficult is it to delight therein. Difficult and painful is household life. Painful is association with those who are
incompatible. Ill befalls a wayfarer (in samsāra). Therefore be not a wayfarer, be not a pursuer of ill.

----

Story

A prince became a monk and was meditating alone in a forest. At night he heard the festive music in the city and was discontented with his solitary life. A tree-deity encouraged him to take an interest in the lonely life. Later, the discontented monk went to the Buddha and related what had happened. Thereupon the Buddha discoursed to him on the difficulties of a worldly life.

---

14. Saddho silena sampanno —
yasobhogasamaappito
Yam yam padesam bhajati —
tattha tatth' eva pujito.

---

THE DEVOUT ARE RESPECTED EVERYWHERE

14. He who is full of confidence and virtue, possessed of fame and wealth, he is honoured everywhere, in whatever land he sojourns.

---

Story

A devout follower was greatly honoured when he visited the Buddha. The Venerable Ānanda inquired of the Buddha whether he would have
received the same honours if he had visited some other religious teacher. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Saddhā, trustful confidence based on knowledge. Buddhism has no place for blind faith.

15. Düre Santo ṭakāsenti
    himavanto' va ṭabbato
Asant' ettha na dissanti
    ratti khītā yathā sarā.

THE GOOD CAN BE SEEN THOUGH FROM AFAR

15. Even from afar like the Himalaya mountain the good reveal themselves. The wicked, though near, are invisible like arrows shot by night.

Story

A daughter of Anāthapindika, named Culasubhādās got married to a non-Buddhist and went to stay with her parents-in-law. In her honour alms was given to the naked ascetics. Although requested by her father-in-law to wait on them, her modesty would not let her do so. The father-in-law was offended. When she told about the Buddha and His disciples her mother-in-law requested her to invite them to a meal on the following day although at the time they
were dwelling far away. Devout as she was she went into her room and sent out a thought-wave inviting the Buddha. Anāthapindika after listening to a sermon by the Buddha invited Him to a meal on the following day. The Buddha remarked that He had already accepted an invitation from his daughter who had been given in marriage. Anāthapindika expressed his surprise as she was living far away. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

16. **Ekāsanam eksaeyyam**
    eko caram atandito

    **Eko damayam attānam**
    vanante ramito siyā. 305.

**ALONE ONE DELIGHTS IN SOLITUDE**

16. He who sits alone, rests alone, walks alone unindolent, who in solitude controls himself, will find delight in the forest. 305.

**Story**

Praising the life of solitude led by a monk, the Buddha uttered this verse.
Chapter 22

NIRAYA VAGGA
WOEFUL STATE

I. Abhūtavādī nirayam upeti —
    yo c'āpi katvā na karomi'ti c'āha
Ubho' pi te pecca samā bhavanti —
nihinakammā manujā parattha. 306.

LIARS SUFFER

1. The speaker of untruth goes to a woeful state, and also he who, having done aught, says, “I did not”. Both after death become equal, men of base actions in the other world. 306.

Story

In order to disparage the Buddha a woman was killed by some villains hired by a heretical sect and the corpse was concealed in a rubbish heap near the Buddha’s Perfumed Chamber. Later, the murderers confessed their guilt implicating the heretics. Discoursing on the evil of false accusation, the Buddha uttered this verse.
WOEFUL STATE

2. Kāsāvakaṇṭhā bahavo
   pāpadhammā asaṇñatā
Pāpā pāpehi kammehi
   nirayam te upaṇajjare. 307.

CORRUPT MONKS SUFFER

2. Many with a yellow robe on their necks are of evil disposition and uncontrolled. Evil-doers on account of their evil deeds are born in a woeful state. 307.

Story

The Venerable Moggallāna saw a skeleton-like Peta all on fire. The Buddha attributed it to his corrupt life as a monk in a past birth.

3. Seyyo ayogulo bhutto
   tattho aggiskhūpamo
Yañ ce bhuñjeyya dussilo
   raṭṭhapīṇḍam asaṇñato. 308.

BE NOT IMMORAL

3. Better to swallow a red-hot iron ball (which would consume one) like a flame of fire, than to be an immoral and uncontrolled person feeding on the alms offered by people. 308.
Story

Rebuking some monks who, for the sake of their stomach, attributed to one another higher spiritual Attainments without possessing them, the Buddha uttered this verse.

4. Cattāri thānāni naro āmatto
   āpaṭijati ārūpasevi
   A puṇṇalābhāṁ na nikāmaseyyam
   nindami tatiyam nirayam catuttham. 309.

5. A puṇṇalābhō ca gati ca pāpiṅkā
   bhītassa bhītāya ratī ca thokikā
   Rājā ca daṇḍam garukāṁ paṇeti
   tasmā naro āṇaṭāram na seve. 310.

ADULTERY IS EVIL

4. Four misfortunes befall a careless man who commits adultery: acquisition of demerit, disturbed sleep, thirdly blame, and fourthly a state of woe. 309.

5. There is acquisition of demerit as well as evil destiny. Brief is the joy of the frightened man and woman. The King imposes a heavy punishment. Hence no man should frequent another’s wife. 310.

Story

A handsome youth committed adultery. Several times he was taken prisoner before the King
WOEFUL STATE

and was released in deference to his wealthy father. Finally the father took him to the Buddha, who advised the youth on the evils of adultery.

6. Kuso yathā duggahito
    hattham evānukantati
    Sāmaññaṁ dupparāmaṭṭham
    nirayāyāyūpakaḍḍhati. 311.

7. Yam kiñci sithilam kammam
    saṅkiliṭṭhaṁ ca yam vatham
    Saṅkassaraṁ brahmacariyaṁ
    na tam hoti mahāpphalam. 312.

8. Kayirā ce kayirāthenaṁ
    daṭham enam parakkame
    Sithilo hi paribbājo
    bhiyyo ākirate rajami. 313.

CORRUPT LIVES ENTAIL SUFFERING
A LIFE OF DUBIOUS HOLINESS IS
NOT COMMENDABLE
WHAT IS PROPER SHOULD BE DONE
WITH ONE'S WHOLE MIGHT

6. Just as kusa grass, wrongly grasped, cuts the hand, even so the monkhood wrongly handled drags one to a woeful state. 311.

7. Any loose act, any corrupt practice, a life of dubious holiness—none of these is of much fruit. 312.

245
8. If aught should be done, let one do it. Let one promote it steadily, for slack asceticism scatters dust all the more.

Story

A presumptuous monk deliberately committed a wrong act by pulling out blades of grass. The Buddha, rebuking him, uttered these verses.

1. Sāṅkassarāṁ = to think or remember with suspicion.

9. Akatāṁ dukkataṁ seyyo —
   pacchā tapati dukkataṁ
Kataṁ ca suκatām seyyo —
yam katvā n’ānutappati.

DON'T DO EVEN A SLIGHT WRONG

9. An evil deed is better not done: a misdeed torments one hereafter. Better it is to do a good deed, after doing which one does not grieve.

Story

A jealous woman cruelly punished a maid-servant with whom her husband had misconducted himself. When both husband and wife were listening to a sermon from the Buddha the maid-servant came there and related the whole incident. Thereupon the Buddha advised them to do no evil.
GUARD YOURSELF LIKE A FORTIFIED CITY

10. Like a border city, guarded within and without, so guard yourself. Do not let slip this opportunity,\(^1\) for they who let slip the opportunity grieve when born in a woeful state.

---

Story

Some monks who were spending their time in a frontier city led a life of discomfort as the people were busy fortifying their city to guard themselves from bandits. When the monks reported the matter to the Buddha, He advised them to fortify themselves.

---

\(1.\) The birth of a Buddha, a congenial habitation, a healthy body, the possession of right views, etc.

---

11. **Alajjītāye lajjanti**

---

\(\text{lajjītāye na lajjare} \text{ Micchādiṭṭhisamādānā} \text{ sattā gacchanti duggatim.} \)
12. 'Abhaye ca bhayadassino —
bhaye câbhayadassino
Micchādiṭṭhisamādānā —
sattā gacchanti duggatiṁ.  

BE MODEST WHERE MODESTY IS NEEDED
HAVE NO FEAR IN THE NON-FEARSOME

11. Beings who are ashamed of what is not shameful, and are not ashamed of what is shameful, embrace wrong views and go to a woeful state. 316.

12. Beings who see fear in what is not to be feared, and see no fear in the fearsome, embrace false views and go to a woeful state. 317.

Story

Some monks remarked that the Niganṭhas were better than the Acelaka ascetics, as the former, through modesty, covered their pudenda. The Niganṭhas¹ explained why they did so. The Buddha, hearing their discussion, uttered these verses.

¹. Niganṭha, literally, “free from ties or bonds” is the term applied to Jaina ascetics, who, according to this story, cover their pudenda. Acelaka ascetics wander completely naked.
WOEFUL STATE

13. *Avajje vajjadassino*
   - *vajje cāvajjadassino*
   *Micchādiṭṭhisamādānā*
   - *sattā gacchanti duggatim.*

14. *Vajjañ ca vajjato ṇatvā*
   - *avajjañ ca avajjato*
   *sammādiṭṭhisamādānā*
   - *sattā gacchanti suggatim.*

SEE NO WRONG IN WHAT IS NOT WRONG
SEE WRONG AS WRONG AND RIGHT AS RIGHT

13. Beings who imagine faults\(^1\) in the faultless\(^1\) and perceive no wrong in what is wrong, embrace false views and go to a woeful state.  

14. Beings knowing wrong as wrong and what is right as right, embrace right views and go to a blissful state.  

---

**Story**

The children of some heretics were advised by their teacher not to salute the bhikkhus and not to visit the monastery. One day as they were playing with the children of the Buddha’s followers they felt thirsty. So the son of a lay follower was asked to get some water from the monastery. This child mentioned the matter to the Buddha who advised him to bring all the children to the monastery.
After they had quenched their thirst the Buddha preached the Dhamma to them and they became His followers. The parents, hearing of their conversion, were at first displeased. Later, they all came to the Buddha and became His followers. Thereupon the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. *Avajja* means right belief and *vajja* means wrong belief.
Chapter 23

NĀGA VAGGA
THE ELEPHANT

1. Aham nāgo' va sangāme
   cāpāto ṣatitam saram
Ativākyam titikkhissam
   dussilo hi bahujjano.

2. Dantam nayanti samitim
   dantam rājābhirūhati
Danto setṭho manussesu
   yo' tivākyam titikkhati.

3. Varam assatarā dantā
   ājāniyā ca sindhavā
Kuñjarā ca mahānāgā
   attadanto tato varam.

THE MAJORITY ARE UNDISCIPLINED
1. As an elephant in the battlefield withstands
   the arrows shot from a bow, even so will I endure
   abuse; verily most people are undisciplined. 320.

THE CULTURED ENDURE ABUSE
2. They lead the trained (horses or elephants)
   to an assembly. The king mounts the trained
animal. Best among men are the trained who endure abuse.

---

BLESSED IS HE WHO CONTROLS HIMSELF

3. Excellent are trained mules, so are thoroughbred horses of Sindh and noble tusked elephants; but far better is he who has trained himself.

---

Story

Bribed by a lady of the court who had a grudge against the Buddha, many people severely abused the Buddha. The Venerable Ānanda, unable to endure such abuse, suggested to the Buddha that He leave the place and go to another city. But the Buddha advised him to practise patience and compared Himself to an elephant who had entered the battlefield prepared to endure all attacks.

---

4. Na hi etehi yānehi
   gaccheyya agatam disam
   Yathā' tītanā sudantena
   danto dantena gacchati.

---

SELF-CONTROL LEADS TO ONE'S GOAL

4. Surely never by those vehicles would one go to the untrodden land (Nibbāna), as does one who is controlled through his subdued\(^1\) and well-trained\(^2\) self.

---
THE ELEPHANT

Story

A monk who had been an elephant-trainer was watching an elephant-trainer failing to control the animal. He made a suggestion to another monk. The elephant-trainer overheard it and, adopting the suggestion, succeeded. When this matter was reported to the Buddha, the monk was advised to train himself to reach his ultimate goal.

1. Dantena by sense-control.
2. Sudantena by the development of the Noble Path.

5. Dhanapālako nāma kuñjaro —
   kaṭukappabhedano dunnivārayo
   Baddho kabalam na bhuṇjati —
   sumarati nāgavanassa kuñjaro.

__________________________

AN ELEPHANT CARED FOR HIS MOTHER

5. The uncontrollable, captive tusker named Dhanapālaka, with pungent juice flowing, eats no morsel; the tusker calls to mind the elephant forest.

__________________________

Story

An old man was neglected by his children. One day he went to see the Buddha, who made a suggestion to him which proved very successful. Later, the children tenderly cared for their father.
Commenting on their attention, the Buddha uttered this verse to show the loving care of a captive elephant towards its mother.

6. Middhi yadā hoti mahagghaso ca
   niddāyita samparivattasāyī
   Mahāvarāho' va nivāpapuṭṭho
   punappunam gabbham upeti mando. 325.

BE MODERATE IN EATING

6. The stupid one, when he is torpid, gluttonous, sleepy, rolls about lying like a great hog nourished on pig-wash, goes to rebirth again and again. 325.

Story

Owing to overeating King Kosala had to experience much discomfort. As advised by the Buddha he became moderate in eating and improved in health.

7. Īdāṁ pure cittam acāri cārikam
   yena'icchakāṁ yathākāmaṁ yathāsaṅkham
   Tadajj' aham niggahessāmi yoniso
   hatthippabhinnaṁ viya aṅkusaggaho. 326.

CONTROL YOUR THOUGHTS

7. Formerly this mind went wandering where it liked, as it wished and as it listed. Today with
THE ELEPHANT

attentiveness I shall completely hold it in check, as a mahout (holds in check) an elephant in must.

Story

A young novice who led a very virtuous life later desired to leave the Order. But his mother dissuaded him from doing so. Finally he realized the manifold advantages of the Holy Life. The Buddha uttered this verse in admonition.

8. *Appamādaratā hotha* —
   *sacittam anurakkhatha*
   *Duggā uddharath' attānam* —
   *pañke satto' va kuṇjaro.*

AVOID THE EVIL WAY

8. Take delight in heedfulness. Guard your mind well. Draw yourselves out of the evil way as did the elephant sunk in the mire.

Story

An elephant got stuck in the mud. The mahout appeared as if ready for battle and battle drums were also beaten. Soon the elephant exerted itself and extricated itself from the mud. This matter was reported to the Buddha and He advised the monks to exert themselves as did the elephant stuck in mud.
9. Sace labetha nipakam sahāyaṁ
    saddhim caram sādhuvihāridhiram
Abhibhuyya sabbāni parissayāṇi
    careyya ten' attamano satīmā.  —

10. No ce labetha nipakam sahāyaṁ
    saddhim caram sādhuvihāridhiram
Rājā' va raṭṭham vijitam pahāya
    eko care mātaṅgaraṇī' eva nāgo. —

11. Ekassa caritam seyyo
    natthi bāle sahāyatā
Eko care na ca pāpāni kayirā
    appossukko mātaṅgaraṇī' eva nāgo. —

ASSOCIATE WITH THE WISE

9. If you get a prudent companion (who is fit) to live with you, who behaves well and is wise, you should live with him joyfully and mindfully, overcoming all dangers. — 328.

WANDER ALONE IF THERE IS NO SUITABLE COMPANION

10. If you do not get a prudent companion who (is fit) to live with you, who behaves well and is wise, then like a king who leaves a conquered kingdom, you should live alone as an elephant does in the elephant forest. — 329.

A SOLITARY CAREER IS BETTER

11. Better it is to live alone. There is no fellowship with the ignorant. Let one live alone
THE ELEPHANT

doing no evil, care-free, like an elephant in the elephant forest.

Story

The Buddha on one occasion lived alone in a forest. Commenting on His solitary life, the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. Sahāyatā. By this term are meant morality, austere practices, insight, Paths, Fruits and Nibbāna. (Commentary) See v. 61.

12. Atthamhi jātamhi sukhā sahāyā
    tuṭṭhi sukhā yā itarītareṇa
Puṇṇāṁ sukhāṁ jīvitasanākhayamhi
    sabbassa dukkhassā sukhāṁ pahānaṁ 331.

13. Sukhā matteyyatā loke
    atho petteyyatā sukhā
Sukhā sanāṇatā loke
    atho brahmaṇatā sukhā. 332.

14. Sukham yāva jarā silam
    sukhā saddhā patiṭhitā
Sukho paññāya paṭilābhoh
    pāpānam akaraṇam sukhāṁ. 333.

BLESSED ARE FRIENDS IN NEED

12. When need arises, pleasant (is it to have) friends. Pleasant is it to be content with just this and that. Pleasant is merit when life is at an end. Pleasant is the shunning of all ill. 331.
BLESSING THE PARENTS

13. Pleasant in this world is ministering to mother.\(^1\) Ministering to father too is pleasant in this world. Pleasant is ministering to ascetics. Pleasant too is ministering to the Noble Ones\(^2\). 332.

---

BLESSING VIRTUE, FAITH AND WISDOM

14. Pleasant is virtue (continued) until old age. Pleasant is steadfast confidence. Pleasant is the attainment of wisdom. Pleasant is it to do no evil.

---

Story

Māra, the Evil one, invited the Buddha to become a King. The Buddha remarked that He had nothing in common with him and mentioned the causes of happiness.

---

1. \textit{Matteyyatā} does not mean motherhood or "to have a mother". The Commentarial explanation is good conduct (\textit{sammā-pāṭipatti}) towards the mother, that is, ministering to the mother. The other terms are similarly explained.

2. The Buddha, the Arahants, and so on.
Chapter 24

TANHĀ VAGGA
CRAVING

1. Manujassa ṭamattacārino —
   taṅhā vaḍḍhati mālūvā viyā
   So plavati hurāhuram —
   ḍhalaṁ icchāṁva vanamīṁ vānaro. 334.

2. Yāṁ esā sahatī jammi —
   taṅhā loke visattikā
   Sokā tassa ḍavaḍḍhanti —
   abhivaṭṭhām’va bīraṇam. 335.

3. Yo c’etan sahatī jammiṁ —
   taṅham loke duraccayaṁ
   Sokā tamhā paṇapantti —
   udabindu’va pokkharā. 336.

4. Taṁ vo vadāmi bhaddāṁ vo —
   yāvant’ ettha samāgataṁ
   Taṅhāya mūlaṁ khanatha —
   usīrattho’va bīrāṇam
   Mā vo naṇāṁ va soto’va —
   māro bhaṅji punappunam. 337.

CRAVING ARISES IN THE NEGLIGENT

1. The craving¹ of the person addicted to
careless living grows like a creeper. He jumps from
life to life like a fruit-loving monkey in the forest.

THOSE WHO CRAVE MULTIPLY THEIR SORROWS

2. Whomsoever in this world this base clinging thirst overcomes, his sorrows flourish like well-watered birṇa grass.

THERE IS NO SORROW TO THE CRAVING-FREE

3. Whoso in the world overcomes this base unruly craving, from him sorrows fall away like water-drops from a lotus-leaf.

CUT OFF CRAVING FROM THE ROOT

4. This I say to you: Good luck to you all who have assembled here! Dig up the root of craving like one in quest of birṇa's sweet root. Let not Māra\(^2\) crush you again and again as a flood (crushes) a reed.

Story

The Buddha uttered these verses with reference to an insolent monk, who though well-versed in the Dhamma, was full of craving and through pride used to disparage others.
CRAVING

1. Craving is threefold, viz—craving for sensual pleasures (kāmataṅkhā), craving connected with the notion of eternalism (bhavaṅkhā), and craving connected with the notion of nihilism (vibhavaṅkhā). Craving for personal sense-fields, such as eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mind, and for external sense-fields, such as form, sound, scent, taste, contact, and dhammas (mental objects), when viewed in the foregoing three aspects, divides itself into thirty-six varieties. When they are viewed according to past, present, and future they become one hundred and eight.

Bhavaṅkhā may also be interpreted as attachment to life or Realms of Form, and vibhavaṅkhā as attachment to annihilation or Formless Realms.

2. Passions.

5. Yathā' pi mūle anupaddave dalhe —
   chinno' pi rukkho punareva rūhati
   Evam pi taṅhānusaye anūhate —
   nibbatti dikkham idam punap punam. 338.

6. Yassa chattimstati sotā —
   manāpassavanā bhusā
   Vāhā vahanti duddīthim —
   saṅkappā riɡanissitā. 339.

7. Savanti sabbañhi sotā —
   latā ubbhijja tiṭṭhati
   Taṅ ca disvā latam jätam —
   mūlam paṅñāya chindatha. 340.
8. Saritāni sinehitāni ca
   somanassāni bhavanti jantuno
   Te sātasitā sukhesino
   te ve jātijarūpagā narā. 341.

9. Tasiṇāya ṭurakkhatā pājā
    parisappanti saso' va bādhito
    Saññojanasaṅgasattā
    dūkkham uṇenti punaṃ punaṃ cirāya. 342.

10. Tasiṇāya ṭurakkhatā pājā
    parisappanti saso' va bādhito
    Tasmā tasiṇāṃ vinodaye
    bhikkhu ākaṅkhi virāgam attano. 343.

THERE IS SUFFERING AS LONG AS THERE IS CRAVING

5. Just as a tree with roots unharmed and firm, though hewn down, sprouts again, even so while latent craving is not rooted out, this sorrow springs up again and again. 338.

LUSTFUL THOUGHTS ARISE IN HIM WHO HAS CRAVING

6. If in anyone the thirty-six streams (of craving)¹ that rush towards pleasurable thoughts² are strong, such deluded person, torrential thoughts of lust carry off. 339.

CUT OFF CRAVING WITH WISDOM

7. The streams (craving) flow everywhere. The creeper (craving) sprouts³ and stands.⁴ Seeing the creeper that has sprung up, with wisdom cut off root. 340.
ATTACHMENT TO SENSUAL PLEASURES
LEAD TO BIRTH AND DECAY

8. In beings there arise pleasures that rush (towards sense-objects) and (such beings) are steeped in craving. Bent on happiness, they seek happiness. Verily, such men come to birth and decay. 341.

FETTERED BY CRAVING THEY
COME TO GRIEF

9. Folk enwrapt in craving are terrified like a captive hare. Held fast by fetters and bonds, for long they come to sorrow again and again. 342.

HE WHO DESIRES PASSIONLESSNESS
SHOULD DISCARD CRAVING

10. Folk, enwrapt in craving, are terrified like a captive hare. Therefore a bhikkhu who wishes his own passionlessness (Nibbāna) should discard craving. 343.

Story

While the Buddha was passing along a street He saw a young sow. Relating how in some of her past births she had enjoyed high estate and in others suffered degradation, He spoke on the manifold evil consequences of craving.
1. See note on v. 334.
2. Through the six sense-doors.
3. That is, from the six sense-doors.
4. Resting on the six sense-objects.
5. There are five kinds of bonds (saṅga)—namely, lust, hatred, delusion, pride, and false views.

II.  Yo nibbanatho vanādhimutto  
     vanamutto vanam eva dhāvati

Tam puggalam etha passatha  
     mutto bandhanam eva dhāvati.  344.

IT IS FOOLISH TO RETURN TO WORLDLY LIFE

II. Whoever with no desire (for the household) finds pleasure in the forest (of asceticism) and, though freed from desire (for the household), (yet) runs back to that very home. Come, behold that man! Freed, he runs back into that very bondage.¹ 344.

Story

This verse was uttered by the Buddha about a young man who, through faith, entered the Order, but later, tempted by sensual pleasures, returned to the household life.

1. Here is a pun on the two meanings of vana, forest and desire.
CRAVING

12. Na tam dalham bandhanam āhu dhīrā —
yadāyasām dārujam babbajaṇ ca

Sārattarattā maṇikuṇḍalesu —
puttesu dāresu ca yā apekkhā. 345.

13. Etam dalham bandhanam āhu dhīrā —
ohārinam sithilaṃ duppaṃuṇcam

Etam pi chetvāna vajanti dhīrā —
anapekkhino kāmasukham pahāya. 346.

ATTACHMENT TO WORLDLY OBJECTS IS FAR STRONGER THAN IRON CHAINS

12. That which is made of iron, wood or hemp, is not a strong bond, say the wise; the longing for jewels, ornaments, children, and wives is a far greater attachment. 345.

RENOUNCE SENSUAL PLEASURES

13. That bond is strong, say the wise. It hurls down, is supple, and is hard to loosen. This too the wise cut off, and leave the world, with no longing, renouncing sensual pleasures. 346.

Story

Some monks passing a prison house observed the criminals bound by chains. They inquired of the Buddha whether there were other bonds stronger than what they had seen. The Buddha replied that the bond of craving was a thousand times stronger.
14. Ye rāgarattānupatanti sotām —
sayam kataṁ makkaṭako' va jālam —
Etam āṅgīna vajanti dhīra —
anāpekkhino sabbadukkham pahāya. 347.

THE LUSTFUL ARE CAUGHT IN THEIR OWN WEB

14. Those who are infatuated with lust fall back into the stream as (does) a spider into the web spun by itself. This too the wise cut off and wander, with no longing, released from all sorrow. 347.

Story

A certain queen was infatuated with her own beauty. The Buddha contrived a means to create in her disgust for external beauty. Consequently she realized the transitoriness of life. In admonition the Buddha uttered this verse.

15. Muñca pure muñca pacchato —
majjhe muñca bhavassa pāragū —
Sabbattha vimuttamānaso —
na puna jātijaram upehisi. 348.

RELEASE YOUR MIND

15. Let go the past. Let go the future. Let go the present (front, back and middle). Crossing to the farther shore of existence, with mind released
CRAVING

from everything, do not again undergo birth and decay. 348.

Story

A youth fell in love with a female acrobat and, becoming an acrobat himself, wandered from place to place. One day the Buddha met him and uttered this verse in admonition.

1. That is, attachment to the past, present, and future Aggregates.

16. Vitakkapamathitassa jantuno —
    tibbarāgassa subhānupassino
Bhiyyo taṇhā pavaḍḍhati —
esā kho daḷham karoti bandhanām. 349.

17. Vitakkūpasame ca yo rato —
    asubham bhāvayati sadā sato
Esa kho vyantikāhīti —
eso checchati mārabandhanām. 350.

CRAVING GROWS IN THE PASSIONATE

16. For the person who is perturbed by (evil) thoughts, who is exceedingly lustful, who contemplates pleasant things, craving increases more and more. Surely, he makes the bond (of Māra) stronger. 349.

THE MINDFUL END CRAVING

17. He who delights in subduing (evil) thoughts, who meditates on “the loathsomeness”
(of the body), who is ever mindful,—it is he who will make an end (of craving). He will sever Māra’s bond.

Story

A young monk was tempted by a woman who had fallen in love with him. As he was chafing under the Holy Life he was taken to the Buddha. He then related the cause of his discontent. The Buddha related an incident from a previous life of the young monk to show how he had been betrayed by that particular woman earlier too, and He uttered these verses.

1. This is the meditation on the impurities of the body by practising which one can get rid of attachment to the body.

18. Nitthaṅgato asantāsi —
    vitataṁho anaṅgano
    Acchindhi bhavassallāṇi —
    antimo’yaṁ samussayo. 351.

19. Vitataṁho anāḍāno —
    niruttippadakovido
    Akkharāṇam sannipātām —
    jaññā pubbaparāṇi ca
    Sa ve antimasāriro —
    mahāpaṇṇo mahāpurisotī vuccati. 352.
CRAVING

HE WHO IS FREE FROM CRAVING IS IN HIS FINAL LIFE

18. He who has reached the goal, is fearless, is without craving, is passionless, has cut off the thorns of life. This is his final body. 351.

THE NON-ATTACHED PERSON IS A GREAT SAGE

19. He who is without craving and grasping, who is skilled in etymology and terms,1 who knows the grouping of letters and their sequence, —it is he who is called the bearer of the final body, one of profound wisdom, a great man. 352.

Story

A young novice who had attained Arahantship lay asleep in front of the Buddha’s Perfumed Chamber. Mara came to frighten him. The Buddha, perceiving him, declared that he who had destroyed craving was fearless.

1. Niruttipađakovido—versed in the four kinds of analytical knowledge (patisambhidā)—namely, meaning (attha), text (dhamma), etymology (nirutti), and understanding (paṭibhāna).

20. Sabbābhibhū sabbavidū’ ham asmi — sabbesu dhammesu anūpalitto Sabbañjaho tanhakkhaye vimutto — sayam abhiññāya kam uddiseyyam. 353.
THE OMNISCIENT ONE HAS NO TEACHER

20. All have I overcome, all do I know. From all am I detached. All have I renounced. Wholly absorbed am I in "the destruction of craving".¹ Having comprehended all by myself, whom shall I call my teacher? 353.

Story

Upaka, a wandering ascetic, pleased with the Buddha’s countenance, questioned Him about His teacher. The Buddha replied that He had no teacher.

1. Arahantship.

21. Sabbadānam dhammadānam jināti —
    sabbam rasam dhammaraso jināti
Sabbam ratim dhammaratī jināti —
    taṇhakkhayo sabbadukkham jināti. 354.

THE GIFT OF TRUTH EXCELS ALL OTHER GIFTS

24. The gift of Truth excels all (other) gifts. The flavour of Truth excels all (other) flavours. The pleasure in Truth excels all (other) pleasures. He who has destroyed craving overcomes all sorrow. 354.

Story

In reply to four questions raised by Sakka, King of the gods, the Buddha uttered this verse.
22. Hananti bhogā dummedham —
   no ve pāragavesino
Bhogatanhāya dummedho —
   hanti anīne' va attanam. 355.

RICHES RUIN THE IGNORANT

22. Riches ruin the foolish, but not those in quest of the Beyond (Nibbāna). Through craving for riches the ignorant man ruins himself as (if he were ruining) others. 355.

Story

A childless treasurer died leaving all his wealth. The King ordered all his wealth to be removed to the Royal Treasury and went to see the Buddha. He related what had happened and remarked that although the Buddha dwelt close by the treasurer had not given any alms to Him. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

23. Tiṇadosāni khettāni —
   rāgadosā ayaṁ pāja
   Tasmā hi vitarāgesu —
   dinnam hoti mahapphalam. 356.
24. Tiṇadosāni khettāni —
   dosadosā ayaṁ pāja
   Tasmā hi vitadosesu —
   dinnam hotimahapphalam. 357.
25. Tiṇadosāni khettāni —
mohadosā ayaṁ pājā
Tasmā hi vitamohesu —
dinnam hoti mahāpphalam. 358.

26. Tiṇadosāni khettāni —
icchādosā ayaṁ pājā
Tasmā hi vigaticchesu —
dinnam hoti mahāpphalam. 359.

LUST IS THE BLEMISH OF MANKIND

23. Weeds are the bane of fields, lust is the bane of mankind. Hence what is given to those lustless yields abundant fruit. 356.

HATRED IS THE BLEMISH OF MANKIND

24. Weeds are the bane of fields, hatred is the bane of mankind. Hence what is given to those rid of hatred yields abundant fruit. 357.

DELUSION IS THE BLEMISH OF MANKIND

25. Weeds are the bane of fields, delusion is the bane of mankind. Hence what is given to those rid of craving yields abundant fruit. 358.
CRAVING

DESIRE IS THE BLEMISH OF MANKIND

26. Weeds are the bane of fields, craving is the bane of mankind. Hence what is given to those rid of craving yields abundant fruit.

Story

Commenting on the merits acquired by those who give to the Pure, the Buddha uttered these verses.
Chapter 25

BHIKKHU VAGGA
THE BHIKKHU OR THE MENDICANT

1. Cakkhunā saṁvaro sādhu —
sādhu sotena saṁvaro
Ghāṇena saṁvaro sādhu —
sādhu jīvāya saṁvaro.

2. Kāyena saṁvaro sādhu —
sādhu vācāya saṁvaro
Manasā saṁvaro sādhu —
sādhu sabbathā saṁvaro
Sabbattha saṁvuto bhikkhu —
sabbadukkhā pamuccati.

GUARD THE SENSES

1. Good is restraint in the eye; good is restraint in the ear; good is restraint in the nose; good is restraint in the tongue.

HE WHO GUARDS HIS SENSES IS RELEASED FROM SORROW

2. Good is restraint in deed; good is restraint in speech; good is restraint in mind; good is
restraint in everything. The bhikkhu,\(^1\) restrained at all points,\(^2\) is freed from sorrow. \(361.\)

**Story**

Five monks each of whom was guarding one of the senses inquired of the Buddha which sense was the most difficult to restrain. Instead of answering the question directly the Buddha related a story from one of their past births to show that they had come to destruction because their senses were not guarded, and then He uttered these verses.

---

1. *Bhikkhu* is exclusively a Buddhist term. "Mendicant monk" may be suggested as the best English equivalent.
2. That is, in all senses, literally, everywhere.

---

3. *Hatthasaññato pādasaññato* —
   *vācāya saññato saññatuttamo* 
   *Ajjhattarato samāhito* —
   *eko santusito tam āhu bhikkhum.* \(362.\)

---

**THE FULLY CONTROLLED PERSON IS CALLED A BHIKKHU**

3. He who is controlled in hand, in foot, in speech, and in the highest (i.e., the head); he who delights in meditation,\(^1\) and is composed; he who is alone, and is contented,—him they call a bhikkhu. \(362.\)
Story

A monk killed a flying swan by hitting it in the eye with a stone. The Buddha, advising him, explained the state of a bhikkhu.

1. Here the Pali term *ajjhatta*, literally, personal, refers to the subject of meditation.

4. Yo mukhasaṃñato bhikkhu —
   mantabhānī anuddhato
   *Atthāṁ dhammañ ca dīpeti* —
   madhuram tassa bhāsitam. 363.

SWEET IS HIS SPEECH WHO CONTROLS HIS TONGUE

4. The bhikkhu who is controlled in tongue, who speaks wisely,¹ who is not puffed up, who explains the meaning and the text,—sweet, indeed, is his speech. 363.

Story

The Buddha uttered this verse with reference to a monk who reviled the two Chief Disciples.


5. *Dhammārāmo dhammarato* —
   *dhamman anuvicintayam*
   *Dhammaṁ anussaram bhikkhu* —
   *saddhammā na pariḥāyati.* 364.
THE BHIKKHU OR THE MENDICANT

HE WHO FINDS PLEASURE IN THE DHAMMA
DOES NOT FALL

5. That bhikkhu who dwells in the Dhamma, who delights in the Dhamma, who meditates on the Dhamma, who well remembers the Dhamma, does not fall away from the sublime Dhamma. 364.

Story

A monk, named Dhammārāma, knowing that the Buddha would soon pass away, refrained from mingling with the other monks and instead used to meditate on the Dhamma with the object of attaining Arahantship. Misconstruing his attitude, the monks reported the matter to the Buddha. When the monk explained his object in doing what he did, the Buddha applauded him and uttered this verse.

6. Salābham nātimaṁneyya —
   nāṁnesam pihayam care
Aṁnesam pihayam bhikkhu —
   samādhim nāṁadhigacchati. 365.
7. Appalābho' pī ce bhikkhu —
   salābham nātimaṁati
Tam ve devā pasamsanti —
   suddhājīvim atanditam. 366.

BE CONTENTED

6. Let him not despise what he has received, nor should he live envying (the gains of) others.
The bhikkhu who envies (the gains of) others does not attain concentration.¹

---

DESPISE NOT WHAT ONE GETS

7. Though receiving but little, if a bhikkhu does not despise his own gains, even the gods praise such a one who is pure in livelihood and is not slothful.

---

Story

A monk, accepting an invitation from a monk who was a follower of the Venerable Devadatta, spent a few days enjoying his hospitality. When he returned to the monastery the other monks mentioned the matter to the Buddha. Thereupon the Buddha uttered these verses in admonition to him and other monks.

---

1. Samādhi, both mundane and supramundane concentration.

---

8. Sabbaso nāmarūpasmin —
   yassa nāthi mamāyitam
   Asatā ca na socati —
   sa ve bhikkhū ti vuccati. ³⁶⁷

---

HE IS A BHIKKHU WHO HAS NO ATTACHMENT

8. He who has no thought of “I” and “mine” whatever towards mind and body, he who grieves
not for that which he has not, he is, indeed, called a bhikkhu.

---

**Story**

A devotee offered alms to the Buddha when He stood at his door and wished to know what constituted a bhikkhu. Briefly the Buddha described the attributes of a bhikkhu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9. Mettāvihārī yo bhikkhu</th>
<th>pasanno buddhasāsane</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adhigacche padam santam</td>
<td>saṅkhārūpasamaṁ sukham.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10. Siñca bhikkhu imam nāvam</th>
<th>sittā te lahum essati</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chetvā rāgaṁ ca dosaṁ ca</td>
<td>tato nibbānam ehisi.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11. Pañca chinde pañca jahe</th>
<th>pañca c’uttari bhāvaye</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pañca saṅgātigo bhikkhu</td>
<td>oghatīṇno’ ti vuccati.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12. Jhāya bhikkhu mā ca pamādo</th>
<th>mā te kāmagune bhamassu cittam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mā lohagulam gili pamatto</td>
<td>mā kandi dukkham idan’ti dayhamāno.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13. Natthi jhānaṁ apaṁñassa</th>
<th>paṁñā natthi ajhāyato</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yamhi jhānaṁ ca paṁñā ca</td>
<td>sa ve nibbānasantike.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14. Suññāgāram pavittissa</th>
<th>santacittassa bhikkhuno</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amānusi rati hoti</td>
<td>sammā dhammaṁ vipassato.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
15. Yato yato sammasati
    khandhānam udayabbayām
Labhi piti pāmojjam
    amatan taṁ vijānataṁ. 374.
16. Tatāyam ādi bhavati
    idha paññassa bhikkhuno
Indriyagutti santuttaṁ
    pātimokkhe ca samvaro
Mitte bhajassu kalyāne
    suddh' ājive atandite. 375.
17. Paṭisanthāravutī assa
    ācārakusalo siyā
Tato pāmojjabahulo
    dukkhass' antam karissati. 376.

THE BHIKKHU WHO RADIATES LOVING-KINDNESS RADIATES PEACE

9. The bhikkhu who abides in loving-kindness, who is pleased with the Buddha's Teaching, attains to that state of peace and happiness, the stilling of conditioned things. 368.

GIVE UP LUST AND HATRED

10. Empty this boat, O bhikkhu! Emptyed by you it will move swiftly. Cutting off lust and hatred, to Nibbāna you will thereby go. 369.

FLOOD-CROSSER IS ONE WHO HAS GIVEN UP THE FETTERS

11. Five cut off, five give up, five further cultivate. The bhikkhu who has gone beyond the five bonds is called a "Flood-Crosser". 370.
THE BHIKKHU OR THE MENDICANT

MEDITATE EARNESTLY

12. Meditate, O bhikkhu! Be not heedless. Do not let your mind whirl on sensual pleasures. Do not be careless and swallow a ball of lead. As you burn cry not "This is sorrow." 371.

THERE IS NO WISDOM IN THOSE WHO DO NOT THINK

13. There is no concentration in one who lacks wisdom, nor is there wisdom in him who lacks concentration. In whom are both concentration and wisdom, he, indeed, is in the presence of Nibbāna. 372.

HE WHO IS CALM EXPERIENCES TRANSCENDENTAL JOY

14. The bhikkhu who has retired to a lonely abode, who has calmed his mind, who perceives the doctrine clearly, experiences a joy transcending that of men. 373.

HE IS HAPPY WHO REFLECTS ON RISE AND FALL

15. Whenever he reflects on the rise and fall of the Aggregates, he experiences joy and happiness. To "those who know" that (reflection) is Deathless. 374.
A WISE BHIKKHU MUST POSSESS
HIS CARDINAL VIRTUES

16. And this becomes the beginning here for a
wise bhikkhu: sense-control, contentment, restraint
with regard to the Fundamental Code (pātimok-
kkha), association with beneficent and energetic
friends whose livelihood is pure. 375.

A BHIKKHU SHOULD BE CORDIAL IN
ALL HIS WAYS

17. Let him be cordial in his ways and
refined in conduct; filled thereby with joy, he
will make an end of ill. 376.

Story

A monk, seated in a specially constructed
pavilion, was preaching the Dhamma one night to
his mother and many others. Some robbers
entered her house meanwhile. Their ring-leader
shadowed the woman, intending to kill her if she
should return home before they had done their
fell work. Thrice a servant-maid came and in-
formed her about the robbers, but she sent her
away asking her not to disturb her while listening
to the Dhamma. The ring-leader was impressed by
her devotion. He went up to the robbers and
ordered them to restore all the stolen property.
Then they all came and asked forgiveness from the
devout woman and all became monks. When they
were engaged in meditation the Buddha projected
an image of Himself before them and in admonition
uttered these verses.
1. Having developed the third and fourth jhānas (ecstasies) with Mettā (loving-kindness) as the object of meditation.

2. That is, Nibbāna.

3. The boat resembles the body, water resembles bad thoughts.

4. They are the five fetters (orambhāgiya samyojana) that pertain to this shore-namely, self-illusion (sakkāyadiṭṭhi), doubt (vicikicchā), indulgence in (wrongful) rites and ceremonies (silabbataparāmāsa), sense-desire (kāmarāga), and hatred (paṭigha).

5. They are the five fetters that pertain to the Farther Shore (uddhambhāgiyasamyojana), namely, attachment to the Realms of Form (rūparāga), attachment to the Formless Realms (arūparāga) conceit (māna), restlessness (uddhacca), and ignorance (avijjā).

6. Namely, confidence (saddhā) mindfulness (sati), effort (viriya), concentration (samādhi), and wisdom (paññā). These five factors have to be cultivated if one desires to destroy the fetters.

7. See note under v. 342.

8. Amānusī rati = the eight Attainments (āṭṭhasamāpatti), the four Rūpa Jhānas and the four Arūpa Jhānas.

9. As it leads to Nibbāna.

10. Pātimokkha which deals with the rules that a bhikkhu is bound to observe.
18. Vassikā viya pupphāni —
    maddavāni pamuñcati
Evam rāgaṇi ca dosaṇi ca —
    vippamuñcetha bhikkhavo. 377.

CAST OFF LUST AND HATRED

18. As the jasmine creeper sheds its withered flowers, even so, O bhikkhus, should you totally cast off lust and hatred. 377.

Story

Some monks, observing the falling of some withered jasmine flowers, were stimulated to practise meditation more strenuously. The Buddha, perceiving them, projected an image of Himself before them and uttered this verse.

19. Santakāyo santavāco —
    santavā susamāhito
Vantalokāmiso bhikkhu —
    upasanto' ti vuccati. 378.

HE IS PEACEFUL WHO IS FREE FROM ALL WORLDLY THINGS

19. The bhikkhu who is calm in body, calm in speech, calm in mind, who is well-composed, who has spewed out worldly things, is truly called a “peaceful one”. 378.
THE BHikkhu OR THE MENDICANT

Story

A monk was very calm and quiet and his composed demeanour attracted the attention of the other monks. The Buddha, hearing of his exemplary behaviour, advised the monks to emulate him and uttered this verse.

20. \textit{Attanā coday' attānam} —
\textit{ṇāṭimāse attam attanā}\textsuperscript{1}
\textit{So attagutto satimā} —
\textit{sukham bhikkhu vihāhisi.} \hspace{1cm} 379.

21. \textit{Attā hi attano nātho} —
\textit{attā hi attano gati}
\textit{Tasmā saññamay' attānam} —
\textit{assam bhadram' va vānījo.} \hspace{1cm} 380.

---

HE WHO GUARDS HIMSELF
LIVES HAPPILY


---

YOU ARE YOUR OWN SAVIOUR

21. Self, indeed, is the protector of self. Self, indeed, is one’s refuge. Control, therefore, your own self as a merchant controls a noble steed. 380.

---

Story

A poor ploughman who had for his only possessions his loin cloth and his plough became
a monk. Several times he thought of leaving the robe, but finally, taking for his object of meditation his loin cloth and plough which he had preserved, he attained Arahantship. Commenting on his success, the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. *Paṭimamasetha attanā* in some books.

22. *Pāmojjabahulo bhikkhu*<br>  *pasanno buddhasāsane*  
*Adhigacche padam santam*<br>  *saṁkhārūpasamam sukhām.* 381.

---

**WITH JOY AND FAITH TRY TO WIN YOUR GOAL**

2. Full of joy, full of confidence in the Buddha’s Teaching, the bhikkhu will attain the Peaceful State, the stilling of conditioned things, the bliss (supreme). 381.

---

**Story**

A monk, fascinated by the personality of the Buddha, used to gaze constantly at Him. The Buddha advised him not to do so and remarked that he who sees the Dhamma sees the Buddha. The frustrated monk attempted to commit suicide by jumping off a rock. The Buddha, perceiving him, projected His image before him. The monk overcame his grief and felt happy. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse. The monk meditated and attained Arahantship.
23. Yo have daharo bhikkhu —
    yuñjati buddhasāsane
So imam lokam pabhāseti —
    abbhā mutto' va candimā.

---

EVEN A YOUNG MONK, IF DEVOUT, CAN ILLUMINE THE WHOLE WORLD

23. The bhikkhu who, while still young, devotes himself to the Buddha’s Teaching, illumines this world like the moon freed from a cloud.

---

Story

Praising a young novice for his psychic powers, the Buddha uttered this verse.
Chapter 26

BRĀHMANA\(^1\) VAGGA
THE BRĀHMANA

I. Chinda sotāṁ parakkamma —
kāme ānuda brāhmaṇa
Saṅkhārānaṁ khayam īnatvā —
akataññū' si brāhmaṇa. 383.

———

BE A KNOWER OF THE UNGREAED

I. Strive and cleave the stream.\(^2\) Discard, O brāhmaṇa, sense-desires. Knowing the destruction of conditioned things, be, O brāhmaṇa, a knower of the Unmade\(^3\) (Nibbāna).

———

Story

A devotee, persuaded by his great faith, used to give alms in his house to the monks addressing them, “O Arahants”. The monks in their modesty resented his form of address and discontinued their visits to his house. The devotee was sad and he went to the Buddha to inquire why the monks had ceased to accept his alms. The monks explained the matter. The Buddha said that the
devotee had used that form of address only out of respect and that they should try to become Arahants by cleaving the stream of craving.

1. Though a racial term here it is applied either to a Buddha or an Arahant—to one who has completed the Way and has won Enlightenment.

2. Sotam—stream of craving.

3. Nibbāna is not made of anything. It is unconditioned.

2. Yadā dvayesu dhammesu —
   pāragū hoti brāhmaṇo
   Atha' ssa sabbe samyogā —
   attham gacchanti jānato. 384.

CULTIVATE CONCENTRATION AND INSIGHT

2. When in two states¹ a brāhmaṇa goes to the Farther Shore,² then all the fetters of that "one who knows" pass away. 384.

Story

Knowing that some monks who had come to visit the Buddha from very far away was ripe to realize Nibbāna, the Venerable Šāriputta approached the Buddha and questioned Him about the two states which the Buddha always used to commend. In reply the Buddha uttered this verse.
1. Concentration (samatha) and Insight (vipassanā).
2. That is, in acquiring higher intellect (abhiññā).

3. Yassa pāram apāram vā  —
pārāpāram na vijjati
Vitaddaram visanvyuttam  —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam

THE UNBOUND PERSON IS A BRĀHMANA

3. For whom there exists neither the hither¹ nor the farther shore, nor both the hither and the farther shore,² he who is undistressed and unbound,³—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

Māra, disguised as a man, approached the Buddha and questioned Him about the farther shore. The Buddha, recognising him, dismissed him saying that he had nothing to do with the farther shore and uttered this verse.

1. Pāram—the six personal sense-fields; apāram— the six external sense-fields.
2. Not grasping anything as “me” and “mine”.
3. Not connected with the passions.

4. Jhāyim virajam āsinaṁ  —
katakiccam anāsavam
Uttamattham anuppanṭam  —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 386.
HE WHO IS MEDITATIVE AND PURE IS A BRĀHMANA

4. He who is meditative,\(^1\) stainless and secluded,\(^2\) he who has done his duty and is free from corruptions,\(^3\) he who has attained the Highest Goal,\(^4\)—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

386.

Story

A brahmin noted that the Buddha used to address His monks as “brāhmaṇa”, and he thought that he too was entitled to the same form of address as he was a brahmin by birth. He questioned the Buddha about the matter. The Buddha replied that one did not become a brāhmaṇa by birth but by attaining his highest goal.

1. He who practises concentration (samaṭha) and insight (vipassanā).
2. Āśīnam, living alone in the forest.
3. By realizing the four Truths and eradicating the fetters.
4. That is, Nibbāna.

5. Divā taṭati ādicco
   rattim obhāti candimā
Sannaddho khattiyo taṭati
   jhāyi taṭati brāhmano
Atha sabbam ahorattim
   Buddho taṭati tejasā.

387.
THE BUDDHA SHINES THROUGHOUT
DAY AND NIGHT

5. The sun shines by day; the moon is radiant by night. Armoured shines the warrior king. Meditating the brāhmaṇa shines. But all day and night the Buddha shines in glory. 387.

Story

The Venerable Ānanda perceived a king in all his glory, a meditative monk seated in the hall, and the setting sun and the rising moon. Then he beheld the Buddha outshining them all in glory. When he mentioned his impressions of the different sights to the Buddha He uttered this verse.

1. Here Khattiya refers to a king.
2. That is, an Arahant.
3. The Buddha eclipses immorality by the power of morality (sīla), vice by the power of virtue (guna), ignorance by the power of wisdom (pañña), demerit by the power of merit (puṇṇa), unrighteousness by the power of righteousness (dhamma). (Commentary).

6. Bāhitapāpo’ti brāhmaṇo
   samacariyā samano’ ti vuccati

   Pabbājay’ attano malaṁ
   tasmā pabbajito’ ti vuccati. 388.
THE BRAHMANA

HE IS HOLY WHO HAS DISCARDED ALL EVIL

6. Because he has discarded evil, he is called a brāhmaṇa; because he lives in peace,² he is called a samana; because he gives up the impurities, he is called a pabbajita—recluse. 388.

Story

An ascetic of an alien sect approached the Buddha and requested Him to address Him as "pabbajita"—recluse. In reply the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Having subdued all evil.

7. Na brāhmanassā pahareyya —
   nādassā muñcetha brāhmaṇo
Dhi brāhmanassā hantāram —
   tato-dhi yassa muñcati. 389.

8. Na brāhmanass' etadakiṇci seyyo —
   yadā nisedho manaso piyehi
   yato yato hiṁsamano nivattati —
   tato tato sammatimeva dukkham. 390.

HARM NOT AN ARAHANT

7. One should not strike a brāhmaṇa,¹ nor should a brāhmaṇa vent (his wrath) on one who has struck him. Shame on him who strikes a brāhmaṇa! More shame on him who gives vent (to his wrath)! 389.

293
AN ARAHANT DOES NOT RETALIATE

8. Unto a brāhmaṇa that (non-retaliation) is of no small advantage. When the mind is weaned from things dear, whenever the intent to harm ceases, then and then only doth sorrow subside. 390.

Story

Once a certain brahmin struck the Venerable Sāriputta to test his patience. The latter did not get angry. Instead of retaliating, he pardoned him and also ate food in his house. Praising the Venerable Sāriputta for his outstanding patience, the Buddha explained the attitude of a real brāhmaṇa (Arahant).

i. Here brāhmaṇa is used in the sense of an Arahant.

9. Yassa kāyena vācāya
    manasā natthi dukkatam
    Samvutam tihi ṭhānehi
    tam ahaṁ brūmi brāhmaṇam. 391.

HE IS A TRUE BRĀHMANA WHO IS WELL-RESTRAINED

9. He that does no evil through body, speech, or mind, who is restrained in these three respects,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 391.

Story

Some nuns would not observe the vinaya ceremonies with the Venerable Mahā Pajāpati
THE BRAHMANA

Gotamī since they doubted her authenticity as a bhikkhunī (nun). The Buddha explained matters and remarked that no doubts should be entertained with regard to a Passionless One who is restrained in the three doors (i.e., body, speech and mind).

10. Yamhā dhammanām vijāneyya
     sammāsambuddhadesitam
     Sakkaccaṁ taṁ namasseyya —
     agghuttam' va brāhmaṇo. 392.

HONOUR TO WHOM HONOUR IS DUE

10. If from anybody one should understand the doctrine preached by the Fully Enlightened One, devoutly should one reverence him, as a brahmin reveres the sacrificial fire. 392.

Story

The Venerable Sāriputta, in reverencing his first teacher, the Venerable Assaji, from whom he had learnt the Dhamma, used to turn in the direction of Assaji’s abode. Some monks misconstrued his action and reported to the Buddha that Sāriputta was reverencing the cardinal points.¹ The Buddha defended him and explained the attitude of a pupil towards his teacher.

¹ The adherents of certain cults worshipped the four cardinal points, the zenith and the nadir, e.g., Sigāla (of the Sigālovāda Sutta).
THE BRĀHMANA

11. Na jaṭāhi na gottena
    na jaccā hoti brāhmaṇo
    Yamhi saccaṁ ca dhammo ca
    so suci so ca brāhmaṇo. 393.

PURE IS HE WHO IS TRUTHFUL
AND RIGHTEOUS

11. Not by matted hair, nor by family, nor by
birth does one become a brāhmaṇa. But in whom
there exist both truth\textsuperscript{1} and righteousness,\textsuperscript{2} pure
is he, a brāhmaṇa is he. 393

Story

A brahmin by birth approached the Buddha
and requested Him to address him as "brāhmaṇa"
just as the monks were addressed. Thereupon the
Buddha uttered this verse.

1. The realization of the four Noble Truths.
2. Here Dhamma refers to the nine supramun-
dane States—the four Paths, the four Fruits,
and Nibbāna.

12. Kim te jaṭāhi dummedha
    kim te ajinasātīyā
    Abbhantaram te gahaṇaṁ
    bāhiram parimajjasi. 394.

BE PURE WITHIN

12. What is the use of your matted hair,
O witless man? What is the use of your antelope
skin garment? Within, you are full of passions; without, you embellish yourself.1

**Story**

The Buddha uttered this verse in connection with an ascetic who attempted to kill a lizard.

1. With the paraphernalia of the ascetics.

13. Pāṁsukūladharam jantum —
    kisam dhamanisanthataṁ
    Ekāṁ vanasmim jhāyantam —
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇan. 395.

**WHO MEDITATES ALONE IN THE FOREST IS A BRĀHMĀNA**

13. The person who wears dust-heap robes,1 who is lean, whose veins stand out, who meditates alone in the forest,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 395.

**Story**

The Venerable Kīṣā Gotāmī, who was meditating alone in the forest, wearing dust-heap robes, came through the air to salute the Buddha. Seeing Sakka, King of the gods, she turned back after saluting. Sakka wished to know who she was. The Buddha uttered this verse in reply.

1. Robes made of cast-off rags.
BRĀHMANA VAGGA

14. Na c'āham brāhmaṇam brūmi —
yonijāṁ māttisambhavāṁ

Bhovādi nāma so hoti —
sa ce hoti sakiṇcano

Akiṇcanāṁ anādānam —
tam ahaṁ brūmi brāhmaṇam. 396.

THE NON-POSSESSIVE AND THE NON-ATTACH̄ED PERSON IS A BRĀHMANA

14. I do not call him a brāhmaṇa merely because he is born of a (brahmin) womb or sprung from a (brahmin) mother. He is merely a “Dear-addresser”¹ if he be with impediments. He who is free from impediments, free from clinging,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 396.

Story

A brahmin by birth wished the Buddha to address him as “brāhmaṇa”. The Buddha uttered this verse in reply.

1. Bho is a familiar form of address which even the Buddha used in addressing laymen. The term Bho-vādi is applied to the Buddha as well.

15. Sauṣaṁojanaṁ chetvā —
yo ve na paritassati
Saṅgātigāṁ visamyuttāṁ —
tam ahaṁ brūmi brāhmaṇam. 397.
THE BRĀHMĀNA

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO HAS DESTROYED
ALL FETTERS

15. He who has cut off all fetters, who
trembles not, who has gone beyond ties, who is
unbound,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

The Buddha uttered this verse when the
monks reported to the Buddha that the Venerable
Uggasena, an Arahant, claimed that he had no
fear.

16. Chetvā naddhim varattaṁ ca
    sandāmaṁ sahanukkamaṁ
    Ukkhittapaligham buddham
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam.

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO HAS NO HATRED

16. He who has cut the strap (hatred), the
thong (craving), and the rope (heresies), together
with the appendages (latent tendencies), who has
thrown up the cross-bar (ignorance), who is
enlightened¹ (Buddha),—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

Two persons arguing about the comparative
strength of their oxen tested them by loading their
carts with sand and forcing the oxen to draw
them. The carts would not stir an inch but instead
the thongs and straps broke. The monks saw this and mentioned it to the Buddha. Thereupon He advised the monks to destroy the thongs and straps in their own minds.

1. Who has understood the four Noble Truths.

17. Akkosam vadhabandhañ ca —
   aduttho yo titikkhati
   Khantibalam balañikañ —
   tam aham brūmi brāhmañam. 399.

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO IS PATIENT

17. He who, without anger, endures reproach, flogging and punishments, whose power and the potent army is patience,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

A certain wife used to ejaculate words of praise to the Buddha whenever the slightest mishap occurred. Her husband objected to her habit but she persisted. The provoked husband went to the Buddha and angrily put some questions to the Buddha. Hearing His reply, which was marked by great patience, the irate husband became a convert and entered the Order. His brothers came and abused the Buddha for converting him. The Buddha patiently endured their
reproach and preached to them. They were also converted. When the monks extolled His patience the Buddha uttered this verse.

18. Akkodhanam vatavantam —
    silavatam anussutam
Dantam antimasārīram —
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 400.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO IS NOT
WRATHFUL

18. He who is not wrathful, but is dutiful,\(^1\)
virtuous, free from craving, self-controlled and
bears his final body,\(^2\)—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

The Venerable Sāriputta was reviled by his
own mother as she resented his taking of the
monastic life, but he was patient. Hearing of his
patience, the Buddha uttered this verse in praise
of him.

1. Devoted to religious austerity.
2. “Final body” because he, having destroyed the
   passions, would be reborn no more.

19. Vāripokkharapatt' eva —
    āragger' iva sāsāpo
Yo na limpati kāmesu —
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam  401.
HE IS A BRĀHMĀNA WHO CLINGS NOT TO SENSUAL PLEASURES

19. Like water on a lotus leaf, like a mustard seed on the point of a needle, he who clings not to sensual pleasures,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 401.

——

Story

When an Arahant bhikkhuni was raped by a former suitor of hers the monks began wondering whether Arahants are susceptible to sensual pleasures. The Buddha explained that Arahants are not so susceptible.

——

20. Yo dukkhaśa paññāṭi
    iddhi eva khayam attano
Pannabhāraṁ visamyuttam
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 402.

——

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO HAS LAID THE BURDEN ASIDE

20. He who realizes here in this world the destruction of his sorrow, who has laid the burden aside and is emancipated,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 402.

——

Story

Before the promulgation of the rule with regard to the ordination of slaves, a slave belonging
THE BRĀHMĀNA

to a brahmin ran away and entered the Order. Soon he attained Arahantship. The brahmin, seeing him when he went in quest of alms, held him by the hem of his robe. The Buddha remarked that the slave had laid the burden aside and uttered this verse.

1. The burden of the Aggregates.
2. From all defilements.

21. Gambhīrapaṇṇam medhāvīṁ —
maggāmaggassa kovidāṁ
Uttamattham anuppattāṁ —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 403.

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO HAS REACHED HIS ULTIMATE GOAL

21. He whose knowledge is deep, who is wise, who is skilled in the right and wrong way,¹ who has reached the highest goal,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

The Venerable Khemā bhikkhuni came to pay her respects to the Buddha and, seeing Sakka, King of the gods, saluted the Buddha and turned back. Sakka inquired of the Buddha who she was. The Buddha answered that she was a daughter of His who was very wise.

303
1. Who knows the way to the woeful states, to the blissful states, and to Nibbāna.

22. Asamsaṭṭham gahaṭṭhehi —
    anāgārehi c’ūbhayam
Anokasārim appiccham —
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 404.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO HAS NO INTIMACY WITH ANY

22. He who is not intimate either with householders or with the homeless ones, who wanders without an abode, who is without desires,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 404.

Story

Once a monk was dwelling in a cave. A goddess, who had her abode in the cave, made a false accusation against him in order to drive him away. The monk was not angered; on the contrary her words induced him to attain Arahantship. Later, he went to see the Buddha and mentioned the whole incident. The Buddha thereupon uttered this verse.

23. Nidhāya daṇḍam bhūtesu —
    tasesu thāvaresu ca
Yo na hanti na ghāteti —
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 405.

304
THE BRĀHMĀNA

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO IS ABSolutely HARMLESS

23. He who has laid aside the cudgel in his dealings with beings,¹ whether feeble or strong, who neither harms nor kills,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

A monk, who had attained Arahantship while dwelling in a forest, was on his way to see the Buddha. A woman who had quarrelled with her husband entered the same forest desiring to return to her parents’ home. The husband, finding his wife missing, entered the forest in search of her. He saw the woman following the Arahant. The husband, suspecting the Arahant, beat him soundly in spite of the pleadings of his wife, who vouched for his innocence. Later, the Arahant saw the Buddha and mentioned the whole incident. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Literally, towards beings.

24. Aviruddham viruddhesu —
attadaṇḍesu nibbutaṁ
Sādānesu anādānam —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 406.
A Brāhmaṇa is he who is friendly amongst the hostile

24. He who is friendly amongst the hostile, who is peaceful amongst the violent, who is unattached amongst the attached,¹—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 406.

Story

A female devotee expressed her desire to offer food at her house to five monks. Accordingly five Arahat novices went to her house for alms as invited. But as she desired to have five elderly brāhmaṇas (monks), she did not offer alms to the novices. Later, she was convinced of their greatness, for although they were not served first they were not angry. The Buddha, hearing their story, uttered this verse.

1. Those who are attached to the Aggregates.

25. Yassa rāgo ca doso ca
    māno makkho ca pātito
Sāsapor'iva āraggā
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 407.

A Brāhmaṇa is he who has discarded all passions

25. In whom lust, hatred, pride, detraction are fallen off like a mustard seed from the point of a needle,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 407.

306
Story

An Arahant advised his brother monk to leave the Order as he could not memorise a single verse even after four months. The monks thought that the Arahant had done so in anger. The Buddha explained that Arahants have no passions and that the Arahant concerned had been actuated by reverence for the Dhamma.¹

¹. See v. 25.

26. Akakkasaṁ viṁñāpanim —
girāṁ saccam udīraye
Yōya n' ābhisaţe kiści —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 408.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO GIVES OFFENCE TO NONE

26. He who utters gentle, instructive, true words, who by his speech gives offence to none,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 408.

Story

An Arahant was in the habit of addressing others with an epithet employed only in addressing outcasts. The monks took objection to his form of address and mentioned it to the Buddha. Thereupon the Buddha explained that the Arahant had not done so with evil intent but through force of habit from past lives, and on that occasion He uttered this verse.
27. Yo’dha dīgham va rassam vā  anum thūlam subhāsubham
   Loke adinnaṁ nādiyati  —
   tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam.  409.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO STEALS NOT

27. He who in this world takes nothing that is not given, be it long or short, small or great, fair or foul,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.  409.

Story

An Arahant, mistaking a cloth lying on the ground for one abandoned by the owner, took it. The owner saw it and accused him of theft. The Arahant explained that he had not taken it with thievish intent and returned it. He told the other monks about the incident. The monks made fun of him. The Buddha explained that Arahants do not steal anything from others.

28. Āsā yassa na vijjanti  —
   asmim loke ṁaramhi ca
   Nirāsayaṁ visamyuttam  —
   tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam.  410.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO IS DESIRELESS

28. He who has no longings, pertaining to this world or to the next, who is desireless and emancipated,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.  410.
THE BRĀHMANA

Story

The Venerable Sāriputta, at the termination of a rainy season which he had spent in a certain place with many other monks, advised them to bring the robes presented to the young monks and novices and went to see the Buddha. The monks, misconstruing his words, thought that he still harboured desires. The Buddha explained the attitude of the Venerable Sāriputta.

29. Yassālayā na vijjanti —
   aṇṇāya akathāṃkathī
   Amatogadham anuppattan —
   tam aham brūmi brāhmanam. 411.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO HAS NO LONGINGS

29. He who has no longings, who, through knowledge, is free from doubts, who has gained a firm footing in the Deathless (Nibbāna),—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 411.

Story

The story is similar to the preceding one. This time the accusation was made against the Venerable Moggallāna.
30. Yo' d'ha puññañ ca pāpañ ca  —
ubho saṅgam upaccagā
Asokam virajam suddham  —
tam ahañ brūmi brāhmaṇam. 412.

---

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO HAS TRANSCENDED GOOD AND EVIL

30. Herein he who has transcended both good and bad and the ties¹ as well, who is sorrowless, stainless, and pure,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 412.

---

Story

When the monks spoke in admiration of the great merit of the Venerable Revata the Buddha mentioned that he was beyond both good and evil.

---

1. Lust, hatred, delusion, pride, and false views.

---

31. Candam' va vimalam suddham  —
vippasannam anāvilam
Nandibhavaparakkhiñam  —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 413.

---

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO IS PURE

3. He who is spotless as the moon, who is pure, serene, and unperturbed,¹ who has destroyed craving for becoming,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 413.

---

310
THE BRĀHMANA

Story

Owing to a meritorious act in a past birth a person possessed a light like unto the moon’s disc, issuing from his navel. When he came to the presence of the Buddha it disappeared. He wished to know from the Buddha the cause of its disappearance. The Buddha promised to answer if he would enter the Order. Later, he became a monk and attained Arahantship. Thereupon the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Undisturbed by defilements.

32. Yo iham paḷīpatham duggaṁ —
    samsāram moham accaṁ
    Tiṇṇo pāragato jhāyi
    anejo akathamkathī
    Anupāḍāya nibbuto
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam.  414.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO CLINGS TO NAUGHT

32. He who has passed beyond this quagmire, this difficult path, the ocean of life (samsāra), and delusion, who has crossed and gone beyond, who is meditative, free from craving and doubts, who, clinging to naught, has attained Nibbāna, —him I call a brāhmaṇa.  414.

Story

This verse was uttered by the Buddha in connection with Arahant Sīvalī, who had to suffer long in the mother’s womb.
1. Of lust and so forth.
2. Of passions.
3. That which veils the four Noble Truths.
4. The four floods,—namely, sense-desires, becoming, false views, and ignorance.

33. Yo' dha kāme pahatvāna —
               anāgāro paribbaqe
Kāmabhavaparikkīṇam —
               tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 415.

**A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO HAS GIVEN UP SENSE-DESIRE**

33. He who in this world giving up sense-desires, would renounce worldly life and become a homeless one, he who has destroyed sense-desires and becoming,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 415.

**Story**

A courtesan tried to tempt a young monk who belonged to a wealthy family but failed. Praising him, the Buddha uttered this verse.

34. Yo' dha taṇham pahatvāna —
               anāgāro paribbaqe =
Taṇhābhavaparikkhīṇam —
               Tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 416.
A BRAHMANA IS HE WHO HAS GIVEN UP CRAVING

34. He who in this world giving up craving, would renounce worldly life and become a homeless one, he who has destroyed craving and becoming,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.  416.

Story

A wealthy man retired from the world and attained Arahantship. The Buddha uttered this verse to show that the man no longer had any longing for wealth or wife.

35. Hitvā māṇusakāṁ yogāṁ  —
    dibbaṁ yogāṁ upaccagā
Sabbayogavisamyuttam  —
    tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam.  417.

A BRAHMANA IS HE WHO HAS DISCARDED ALL BONDS

35. He who, discarding human ties and transcending celestial ties, is completely delivered from all ties,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.  417.

Story

A monk, who had once been a dancer, said, when questioned by the other monks, that he had no more longing for dancing. Commenting on his change of life and his attainment to Arahantship, the Buddha uttered this verse.
36. Hitvā ratiṣ ca aratiṣ ca
sītibhūtam nirūpadhitam
Sabbalokābhībhum virāj
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 418.

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO HAS GIVEN UP LIKES AND DISLIKES

36. He who has given up likes¹ and dislikes,² who is cooled and is without defilements,³ who has conquered the world,⁴ and is strenuous,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 418.

Story

The story is similar to the preceding one.

1. That is, attachment to sense-desires.
2. Arati = dislike for forest life. (Commentary)
3. Upadhi—there are four kinds of upadhi,—namely, the aggregates (khandha), the passions (kilesa), volitional activities (abhisamkhāra), and sense-desires (kāma).
4. That is, the world of Aggregates.

37. Cutim yo vedi sattānaṁ
upañātiṣ ca sabboṣo
Asattam sugataṁ buddham
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 419.

38. Yassa gatim na jāṇanti
deva gandhabbamanusā
Khīñasavam arahantam
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 420.
THE BRÄHMANA

A BRÄHMANA IS HE WHO IS NOT ATTACHED

37. He who in every way knows the death and rebirth of beings, who is non-attached, well-gone,¹ and enlightened,²—the I call a brähmana.  419.

A BRÄHMANA IS HE WHO IS AN ARAHANT

38. He whose destiny neither gods nor gandhabbas³ nor men know, who has destroyed all corruptions, and is far removed from passions (Arahant)—him I call a brähmana.  420.

Story

A man, named Vangīsa, was able to divine where a dead person had been reborn by tapping at the skull of the dead. Once he came to the Buddha and succeeded in divining the place and state of rebirth of several but failed in the case of an Arahant. He wished to know from the Buddha by what charm he would be able to tell the destiny of such persons. The Buddha replied that He would teach him the charm if he would enter the Order. With the object of learning the charm he became a monk. But before long he attained Arahantship. With reference to him the Buddha uttered these verses.

1. Sugataṁ—well-gone in practice, that is, to Nibbāna.
2. Buddhāṁ—he who has understood the four Noble Truths.
3. A class of celestial beings.
39. Yassa ṃūre ca ṁacchā ca
   majjhe ca natthi kiṅcanam
Akiṅcanam anādānam —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 421.

A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO YEARNS FOR NAUGHT

39. He who has no clinging to Aggregates that are past, future, or present, who is without clinging and grasping,—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 421.

Story

A very devout young wife, with the permission of her husband (who had attained Anāgāmi, the third stage of Sainthood), became a nun and attained Arahantship. One day the husband approached her and put some difficult questions on the Dhamma with the object of testing her. She answered all the questions. When she was questioned on points beyond her scope she referred her husband to the Buddha. Hearing the answers given by the nun, the Buddha applauded her and uttered this verse.

40. Usabhoṁ pavaroṁ viram —
   mahesim vijjāvinam
Anejam nahātakaṁ buddham —
tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇam. 422.
THE BRĀHMĀNA

A BRĀHMĀNA IS HE WHO IS ENLIGHTENED

40. The fearless\(^1\), the noble, the hero, the great sage,\(^2\) the conqueror,\(^3\) the desireless, the cleanser\(^4\) (of defilements), the enlightened,\(^5\)—him I call a brāhmaṇa. 422.

Story

This verse was uttered by the Buddha in connection with the fearlessness of the Venerable Angulimāla.

1. *Usabham*, fearless as a bull.
2. *Mahesīm*, seeker of higher morality, concentration, and wisdom.
3. *Vijitāvīnam*, the conqueror of passions.
4. *Nahātakam*, he who has washed away all impurities.
5. *Buddham*, he who has understood the four Noble Truths.

___

41. *Pubbenivāsāṁ yo vedī* —
    *saggāpāyāṁ ca ṃpassati*

    *Atho jātikkhayaṁ ātto* —
    *abhinīnā vosīto muni*

    *Sabbavositasatvo naṁ* —
    *tam aham brūmi brāhmaṇaññam*. 423.
A BRĀHMANA IS HE WHO HAS PERFECTED HIMSELF

41. That sage who knows his former abodes, who sees the blissful and the woeful states, who has reached the end of births, who, with superior wisdom, has perfected himself, who has completed (the holy life), and reached the end of all passions,—him I call a brāhmaṇa.

Story

Once the Buddha was suffering from a rheumatic pain. A devotee prepared for Him some hot water for a bath. When the Buddha was cured of the pain he came to the Buddha and wished to know to what kind of person a gift should be given if it is to yield abundant fruit. In reply the Buddha uttered this verse.

1. Sagga, the six heavenly realms, the sixteen Rūpa Realms, and the four Arūpa Realms.
2. Apāya, the four woeful states.
3. Jātikkhayam, i.e., Arahantship.
4. Abhiññāvoso, i.e., reached the culmination by comprehending that which should be
comprehended, by discarding that which should be discarded, by realizing that which should be realized, and by developing that which should be developed. (Commentary)

5. *Sabbavositavosānam*, i.e., having lived the Holy Life which culminates in wisdom pertaining to the Path of Arahantship, the end of all passions.

THE END
Index to the first lines of
Pali verses

(Figures indicate verse numbers)

A

Akakkasamī 408.
Akatam dukkatam 314.
Akkhātāra 276.
Akkocchi maṁ 3,4.
Akkodhanaṁ 400.
Akkodhena 223.
Akkosamī 399.
Acaritvā 155.
Aciram vatayaṁ 41.
Aññā hi 75.
Atṭhīnāṁ nagaram 150.
Attadattham 166.
Attanāṁ codayattānam 379.
Attanāva 161-165.
Atṭānam ce 157-159.
Atṭānam dāmayanti 80.
Atṭānameva 145.
Attā have 158.
Attā hi kiru 104.
Attā hi attano 160-380.
Attha pāpāni 136.
Attha vassa 140.
Atthamhi jātamhi 331.
Anavaṭṭhita cittassa 38.

Anavassuta cittassa 39.
Anikkasāvo 9.
Antakenādhipannassa 288.
Anupubbena 239.
Anūpavādo 185.
Anekajāti saṁsāram 153.
Andhabhūto 174.
Api dibbesu 187.
Apuññalābhō 310.
Appakā te 85.
Appamatto 29-56.
Appamādaratā 327.
Appamāda rato 31.
Appamādena 30.
Appamādo 21.
Appampi ce 20.
Appalābhō 366.
Appassutāyam 152.
Abhayo 317.
Abhittharetha 116.
Abhivādana silissa 109.
Abhūtavādi 306.
Ayasāva 240.
Ayoge 209.
Alaṅkato 142.
Alajjitāye 316.

321
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Avajje</th>
<th>318.</th>
<th>Udakam hi</th>
<th>80-145.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asamisaṭham</td>
<td>404.</td>
<td>Uyyuñjanti</td>
<td>91.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asajjhāyamala</td>
<td>241.</td>
<td>Usabham pavaram</td>
<td>422.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asatam</td>
<td>73.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asāre</td>
<td>11.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asāhasena</td>
<td>257.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asubhānupassim</td>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assaddho</td>
<td>97.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asso yathā</td>
<td>144.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aham nāgo'va</td>
<td>320.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahimsakā</td>
<td>225.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ākāse padam</td>
<td>254.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ārogya paramā</td>
<td>204.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āsā yassa</td>
<td>410.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idamī purī</td>
<td>326.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idha tappati</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idha nandati</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idha modati</td>
<td>16.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idha vassam</td>
<td>286.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idha soscati</td>
<td>15.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ucchinda</td>
<td>285.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uṭṭhānakālamhi</td>
<td>280.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uṭṭhānavatā</td>
<td>24.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uṭṭhānenaṇappamādena</td>
<td>25.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utiṣṭhe</td>
<td>168.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ekkasa caritām</td>
<td>330.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ekām dharmam</td>
<td>176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ekaṣanam</td>
<td>305.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etām kho</td>
<td>192.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etām dalham</td>
<td>346.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etām viśesato</td>
<td>22.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eta matthavasam</td>
<td>289.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etamhi tumhe</td>
<td>275.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etām passathimam</td>
<td>171.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evarī bho</td>
<td>248.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evarī sankārabhūtesu</td>
<td>59.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eso'va maggo</td>
<td>274.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovadeyyānusāseyya</td>
<td>77.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanham dharmam</td>
<td>87.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kayirā ce</td>
<td>313.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāmato</td>
<td>215.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāyappakopaṁ</td>
<td>231.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāyena saṁvaro</td>
<td>361.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāyena saṁvutā</td>
<td>234.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāsavakanṭhā</td>
<td>307.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kippam</td>
<td>236,238</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim te jaṭāhi</td>
<td>394.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiccho</td>
<td>182.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumbhūpamaṇi</td>
<td>40.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuso yathā</td>
<td>311.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko imām</td>
<td>44.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kodham jahe</td>
<td>221.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko nu hāso</td>
<td>146.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHA**

| Chandajāto | 218. |
| Chinda sotam | 383. |
| Chetvā naddhim | 398. |

| J |
| Jayāṁ verāṁ | 201. |
| Jighacchā | 203. |
| Jirantī | 151. |
| Jhāya | 371. |
| Jhāyim | 386. |

**KHA**

| Khano ve | 315. |
| Khanti paramaṁ | 184. |
| Khantibalam | 399. |

**T**

| Tam āputtasu | 287. |
| Tam vo vaḍāmi | 337. |
| Taṁ ca kammaṁ | 68. |
| Tanhāya jāyatī | 216. |
| Tato malā | 243. |
| Tatrābhīratismiccheyya | 88. |

| Tatrāyam ādi | 375. |
| Tatēva kataṭiṇāṇam | 220. |
| Tatiṇāya | 342-343. |
| Tasmā piyaṁ | 211. |
| Tinadosāṇi | 356-357. |
| Tumhehi kiccaṁ | 276. |
| Te jhāyino | 23. |
| Te tādise | 196. |
| Tesaṁ sampanna | 57. |

**G**

| Cakkhunā samvaro | 360. |
| Cattāri thānāni | 309. |
| Candami va vimalaṁ | 413. |
| Candanaṁ tagaraṁ | 55. |
| Carāṁ ce | 61. |
| Caranti bālā | 66. |
| Cirappavāsim | 219. |
| Cutim yō vedi | 419. |

**D**

| Dadāti | 249. |
| Dantaṁ | 321. |
Diso disām 42. | Na tena āṇḍito 258.
Dīghī jāgarato 60. | Na tena bhikkhu 266.
Dukkham dukkha 191. | Na tena hoti 256.
Dukkho 302. | Na tamā dalham 345.
Duniggahassa 35. | Natthī jhānām 372.
Dullabho 193. | Na naggacariyā 141.
Dūrāngama 37. | Na paresam 50.
Dūre santo 304. | Na upphagandho 54.

DHA

Dhanapālako 324. | Na bhaje 78.
Dhammapāṭī 79. | Na vākkaraṇa 262.
Dhammarāmo 364. | Na ve kadariyā 177.
DHīraṇ ca 208. | Na santi puttā 288.

N

Na attahetū 84. | Na samīṇjanti 81.
Na uccāvacami 83. | Na hi etehi 323.
Na kāhāpana 186. | Na hi pāpan 71.
Nagaram yathā 315. | Na hi verena 5.
Na cāham brāhmaṇam 396. | Niṭṭhamgato 351.
Na cāhu na ca 228. | Nīdhāya dāṇḍam 405.
Na jaṭāhi 393. | Nīdhinām'va 76.
Na tam mātā 43. | N'etam kho saraṇam 189.
Na tāvata 259. | N'eva devo 105.
Na tena ariyo 270. | No ce labhetha 329.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Π</th>
<th>PHA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pamṣukūladharamh</td>
<td>Phandanamh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṇca chindeva</td>
<td>Phenuṣpamahm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patīsanthāra</td>
<td>Phusāmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṭhavīsamo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṇḍu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṭhavyā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pamādam appaṁādena</td>
<td>Bahumpi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pamādam anuyuṇjanti</td>
<td>Bahumve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paradukkhhūpadānena</td>
<td>Bāla saṅgatacārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paravajjānupassissa</td>
<td>Bāhita-pāpo’ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parijīṇṇam idam</td>
<td>Bhadro pi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pare ca na vijāṇanti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pavivekarasam</td>
<td>Maggāṇaṭṭhaṅgiko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passa cīṭakatam</td>
<td>Mattā sukha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pānimhi ce</td>
<td>Madhū'va maṁnati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāpaṅ ce</td>
<td>Manujassa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāpā</td>
<td>Manopakopam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāpāṇi parivajjeti</td>
<td>Manopubbaṅgamā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāpo pi passati</td>
<td>Mameva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāmojjja-bahulo</td>
<td>Malithiyā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piyato jāyati</td>
<td>Māṭaram pītaram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puṇṇam ce</td>
<td>Mā paṁḍa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupphāni</td>
<td>Māppamaṁṇetha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pubbe nivāsam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pūjārahe</td>
<td>Māvamaṁṇetha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pemato</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porānam etam</td>
<td>Mā' voca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māse māse</td>
<td>70-106.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middhī yadā hoti</td>
<td>325.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muñca ṁure</td>
<td>348.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhuttam api</td>
<td>65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mettāvihāri</td>
<td>368.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Yassa pāram | 385. |
| Yassa ṁure | 421. |
| Yassa ṛago | 407. |
| Yassālayā | 411. |
| Yassāsavā | 93. |
| Yassindriyāni | 94. |
| Yānimāni | 149. |
| Yāvam hi | 284. |
| Yāva jīvampī | 64. |
| Yāva deva | 72. |
| Ye ca kho samma | 86. |
| Ye jhānapasutā | 181. |
| Ye rāgarattā | 347. |
| Yesam sinnicayo | 92. |
| Yesam sambodi | 89. |
| Yesaṅca | 293. |
| Yo appaduṭṭhassa | 125. |
| Yo imam pāḷipatham |  | 414. |
| Yogā ve | 282. |
| Yo ca ṁubbe | 172. |
| Yo ca buddhaṅ ca | 190. |
| Yo ca vantakasā | 10. |
| Yo ca sameti | 265. |
| Yo ca gāthā | 102. |
| Yo cetaṁ sahaṭī | 336. |
| Yo ca vassasatām | 107-110, III-III-114. |
| Yodha kāme | 415. |
| Yodha tanham | 416. |
| Yodha digham | 409. |

<p>| Yo danḍena | 137. |
| Yo dukkhasa | 402. |
| Yassa chatterṁsatī | 339. |
| Yassa ṁalini | 180. |
| Yassa jītaṁ | 179. |
| Yassa pāpaṁ | 173. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yodha puññaḥ ca</td>
<td>267-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo nibbanatho</td>
<td>344.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo pāṇam</td>
<td>246.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo bālo</td>
<td>63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo mukha</td>
<td>363.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo ve uppatitam</td>
<td>222.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo sāhasam</td>
<td>103.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo sāsanam</td>
<td>164.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo have daharo</td>
<td>382.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sace neresi</td>
<td>134.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sace labhetha</td>
<td>328.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saccam bhaṇe</td>
<td>224.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sadā jāgara</td>
<td>226.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saddho silena</td>
<td>303.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Santam tassa</td>
<td>96.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Santa kāyo</td>
<td>378.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbattha ve</td>
<td>83.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabba dānam</td>
<td>354.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabba pāpassa</td>
<td>183.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbasamyojanam</td>
<td>397.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbaso nāmarūpas-</td>
<td>367.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miṁ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbābhībhū</td>
<td>353.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbe tasanti</td>
<td>129.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbe dhammā</td>
<td>279.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbe saṅkhārā</td>
<td>277-278.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samano natthi</td>
<td>254, 255.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saritāni</td>
<td>341.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salābham</td>
<td>365.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Savanti sabbadhi</td>
<td>340.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahassam api</td>
<td>100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāraṇ ca sārato</td>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāhudassana</td>
<td>206.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siṅca bhikkhu</td>
<td>369.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siladassana</td>
<td>217.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukarāni</td>
<td>163.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukham yāva</td>
<td>333.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukhakāmāni</td>
<td>131-132.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukhā matteyyatā</td>
<td>332.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sukho buddhānam</td>
<td>194.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sujīvam</td>
<td>244.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

R

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ratiyā jāyati</td>
<td>214.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramāṇiśyāni</td>
<td>99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rājato vā</td>
<td>139.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vaciṣpakopam</td>
<td>232.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vajjāṅca</td>
<td>319.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanam chindatha</td>
<td>283.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varamassatarā</td>
<td>322.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vassikā viya</td>
<td>377.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vācānurakkhī</td>
<td>281.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vāṇījo</td>
<td>123.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vārijo</td>
<td>34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vāripokkhara</td>
<td>401.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitakkapamathitassa</td>
<td>349.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitakkūpasame</td>
<td>350.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitatanho</td>
<td>352.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vedanam pharusam</td>
<td>138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suṇñāgāram</td>
<td>373.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudassan vajjan</td>
<td>252.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suddhi asuddhi</td>
<td>165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sududdasaṁ</td>
<td>36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppabuddham 296-299.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subhānupassim 7.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surāmeraya</td>
<td>247.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susukaṁ vata 197-200.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekho paṭhavim 45.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seyyo ayogulo 308.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selo yathā 81.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So karohi 236-238.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| H |
| Hamsādicca | 175. |
| Hatthasaññato | 362. |
| Hananti bhogā | 355. |
| Hitvā mānusakāṁ | 417. |
| Hirinisedho | 143. |
| Hitvā ratiṅ ca | 418. |
| Hirimatā ca | 245. |
| Hīnāṁ dhammaṁ | 167. |
## Index to notes and proper names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Appamāda—24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abhiññā—14</td>
<td>Arahanta—84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abhiññāvosoito—318</td>
<td>Arahant—3, 4, 33, 41, 42, 51, 77, 83, 84, 85, 87, 94, 120, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abodes, Pure—187, 198</td>
<td>Ariya—25, 75, 180, 218, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accomplishment, Means of—49</td>
<td>Asāra—14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accumulation, two kinds of—86</td>
<td>Āsava—193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acelaka—248</td>
<td>Asekha—50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adept—50</td>
<td>Assaddho—92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhamma—203</td>
<td>Assaji—295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhicitta—167</td>
<td>Atidhonacāri—200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregates—11, 177</td>
<td>Attainments—167, 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajjhatta—276</td>
<td>Atta—99, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akata—92</td>
<td>Attadattha—150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akusala—42</td>
<td>Aţṭha samāpatti—167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amata—24, 108</td>
<td>Aţṭhaṅgikamagga—49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anāgāmi—33, 84, 187</td>
<td>Atula—194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anakkhāta—187</td>
<td>Avajja—250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ānanda—55, 57, 83, 141, 148, 170, 178, 205, 252, 292</td>
<td>Avera—8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anāṭhapindika—19, 113, 130, 141, 161, 240, 241</td>
<td>Bala—49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anatta—224</td>
<td>Becoming—16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āngulimāla—156</td>
<td>Bhavatañhā—16, 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anicca—224</td>
<td>Bhāvitām—16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antaka—53</td>
<td>Bhikkhu—11, 31, 32, 131, 182, 216, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anuruddha—88</td>
<td>Bho—298</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Birth, four kinds of—120
Bodhipakkhiyadhamma—49
Bojjhanga—49
Bonds—264
Brahma—99
Brähmanā—288, 289, 294

C
Cakkhupāla—2
Carano—134
Cetanā—3
Cetasika—3
Channa—75
Characteristics—224
Chief Disciples—71, 75, 78
Citta—35, 36
Conduct—fifteen kinds of—134
Consciousness—3, 33, 36, 39 (Seat of), 40
Constituents of Enlightenment—49
Corruptions—193
Craving—141, 161, 261
Cūlapanthaka—27
Cūlasubhaddā—240

D
Dark States—82
Daughter of a weave—157
Deeds, meritorious—46, 111
Defilements—193
Deva—31, 48
Devadatta—12, 19, 83, 147, 148, 156
Dhamma—3, 5, 224, 255
Dhammapada—48
Dhammārāma—277
Dhorayhasīlam—180
Dhutaṅga—219
Discipline—186
Duggati—19
Dukkha—224
Dust-heap robes—395

E
Effort—49
Eightfold Path—49, 221
Enlightenment, Factors of—49, 50
Evil—45, 111, 166
Evil One—58, 159, 163
Existence—16

F
Factors of Enlightenment—49, 50
Faculties—49
Farmer, hungry—177
Fetters—32, 283
Floods—27
Forces—49
Foundations of Mindfulness—49
Fundamental Moral Code—166, 167

G
Gandhabba—99
Gantha—84
Gohika—58
Good—166
Grasping—82
Guhāsayam—39

H
Hadayavatthu—40
Hindrances—82, 235, 236
Host of Evil One—159
Hutam—101

I
Idam saccābhīnivesa—84
Iddhi—158
Iddhipāda—49
Impediments—172
Indakhila—90
Indriya—49
Iṭṭham—90, 101

J
Jhānas—43, 164, 182
Jivaka—83

K
Kaccāyana—88, 89
Kalingaram—44
Kāmataṇhā—261
Kamma—3, 4, 5, 41, 42, 114, 122, 140, 157
Kaṇha—82
Kasāva, Kāsāva—13, 85
Kassapa—29, 58, 85, 86, 186
Khandha—11, 177
Khemā—303
Kitectana—175
Kīsā Gotami—108, 297
Knowledge—eight kinds of—133
Kosala—254
Kusala—46

L
Lapidary—119

M
Maccudheyya—81
Māgandiyā—24, 163
Maghavā—30, 31, 53
Mahesim—317
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mallikā—139</th>
<th>Niruttipadakовида—269</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mantā—200</td>
<td>Nivāraṇa—82, 235, 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māra—11, 99, 159, 163, 175</td>
<td>No-soul—224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mātā—235</td>
<td>Noble Eightfold Path—218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattakundali—5</td>
<td>Noble Truths—222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matteyyatā—258</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means of Accomplishment—49</td>
<td>Ogha—27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit—111</td>
<td>Once-Returner—20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Way—221</td>
<td>Orambhāgiya samyojana—33, 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mind—3, 15, 16, 36, 38, 45, 46</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ministering to a sick monk—44</td>
<td>Pabbajito—166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modes of Discipline—186</td>
<td>Pahatave—16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother Deva—182</td>
<td>Paṁsukūla cīvara—395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Pañcakkhandha—177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nahātakam—317</td>
<td>Paññā—180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naked ascetics—248</td>
<td>Pāpa—111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanda Prince—15</td>
<td>Papañca—172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nessatha—163</td>
<td>Paradāram—246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never-Returner—187</td>
<td>Pāram—290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nibbāna—24, 25, 26, 29, 87, 92, 126, 151, 187, 221, 223, 225 Path</td>
<td>Parents, Buddha’s former—192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niganṭha—248</td>
<td>Pasenadi King—61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niraya—120</td>
<td>Paṭācāra—106, 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nirodhasamāpatti—104</td>
<td>Path Eightfold—49, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paths, the four—131</td>
<td>Path of Virtue—48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pātimokkha—167, 269, 283
Paṭisambhidā—269
Peta—70, 243
Pitā—235
Poṭhila—227
Psychic powers—158
Puñña—111

R
Refuge—169
Revata—93, 194, 310
Roots—166

S
Sabbadhi—84
Sabbvositavosānam—319
Saddhā—11, 157, 240
Sagga—120, 157, 318
Sahāyatā—62, 257
Sahitām—21
Sainthood—22, 92, 207; stages of—33, 161
Sakka—31, 50, 58, 88, 180, 270, 297
Sakadāgāmi—20, 33
Sakkāyadiṭṭhi—81, 283
Sakyas—52
Samādhi—204
Samaṇa—131, 166, 207
Sāmaṇṇassa—22
Sāmāvati—24
Saṁkhāra—177, 223

Sammappadhāna—49
Samsanna—226
Samsāra—61, 62, 86
Samyojana—32, 283
Sanantana—8
Saṅga—264
Saṅgha—171
Saṅkhata-dhamma-nāma—68, 69
Sānuca-rām—235
Sāra—14
Sāriputta—12, 14, 73, 89, 92, 95, 96, 97, 100, 101, 164, 294, 295, 304, 309
Satipaṭṭhāna—49
Sekha—50, 52
Shore, Farther—283, 289, 290
Signless—87
Sīla, pañca—246
Sīrimā—136
Sīvalī—322
Sorrow—224
Sotāpatti—20, 33, 161
Soul—144, 244
States—1, 3, 11, woeful 48; blissful 48
Stream-Winner—161
Suddhāvāsa—187
Suddhodana—153
Sugati—19, 48
Sukka—82
Sumanā—19
| Suppabuddha — 122 |
| Supramundane states — 109, 139 |
| Supreme Ecstasy — 187 |
| Supreme Efforts — 49 |

| T |
| Tādi — 90 |
| Taṅhā — 141, 161, 261 |
| Tathāgata — 222 |
| Tāvatimsa — 164 |
| Thera — 212 |
| Tīs — 84 |
| Tipiṭaka — 22 |
| Tiṣaraṇa — 169 |
| Tissa — 7 |
| Tusita — 164 |

| U |
| Udāna — 141 |
| Udāyi — 65 |
| Uddhambhāgiya samyojana — 33, 283 |
| Uggasena — 299 |
| Upadhi — 314 |
| Upaka — 270 |
| Upasama — 179 |

| V |
| Vajja — 250 |
| Vatavantam — 180 |
| Vana — 264 |
| Venañjā — 78 |
| Veyyaggha — 235 |
| Vibhavatanḥā — 261 |
| Vicāra — 103 |
| Viḍūḍabha — 52 |
| Vijessati — 48 |
| Vijjācarāṇa — 133, 134 |
| Vimokkha — 87, 187 |
| Visākhā — 56, 126, 135, 183 |
| Vissam — 216 |
| Viveka — 72 |
| Void — 87 |
| Volition — 3 |

| W |
| Woeful States — 48 |

| Y |
| Yama — 47, 48 |
| Yamaka — 3 |
| Yamāmase — 9 |
| Yogakkhema — 25 |
Asoka...

"May the Dhamma last as long as my sons and grandsons and the sun and the moon will be, and may the people follow the path of the Dhamma, for if one follows the path, happiness in this and in the other world will be attained."
“Wherever the Buddha’s teachings have flourished, either in cities or countrysides, people would gain inconceivable benefits. The land and people would be enveloped in peace. The sun and moon will shine clear and bright. Wind and rain would appear accordingly, and there will be no disasters. Nations would be prosperous and there would be no use for soldiers or weapons. People would abide by morality and accord with laws. They would be courteous and humble, and everyone would be content without injustices. There would be no thefts or violence. The strong would not dominate the weak and everyone would get their fair share.”
Praise of Amita Buddha

Amita Buddha,
The Lord with the greatest vows,
His mercy, compassion,
delight and abandonment immeasurable,
Between His eyebrows always emits white-curled radiance.
He delivers sentient beings so they may enter
His Western Pure Land of Ultimate Bliss,
Where the pond of eight-virtue water
grows lotuses of nine grades,
And where marvelous seven-jewelled trees form rows.
If the Tathagata’s sacred epithets are propagated,
He will receive us and lead us to
His Western Pure Land of Ultimate Bliss.
If Amita Buddha’s holy name is invoked and praised,
We all vow to go to
His Western Pure Land of Ultimate Bliss.

Amida Buddha all in golden color,
With form, features and radiance unequalled,
White curls winding like the five Sumeru Mountains,
And purple eyes as clear as the four great seas.
In His aura are transformed Buddhas in countless millions,
And transformed Bodhisattvas, also, in limitless number;
Forty-eight vows He made to enlighten sentient beings.
And to enable all nine grades to reach the other shore.
Blessed be the Most Compassionate One
of the Western Pure Land of Ultimate Bliss,
Amita Buddha.
With bad advisors forever left behind,
From paths of evil he departs for eternity,
Soon to see the Buddha of Limitless Light
And perfect Samantabhadra's Supreme Vows.

The supreme and endless blessings
of Samantabhadra's deeds,
I now universally transfer.
May every living being, drowning and adrift,
Soon return to the Land of Limitless Light!

~The Vows of Samantabhadra

I vow that when my life approaches its end,
All obstructions will be swept away;
I will see Amitabha Buddha,
And be born in his Land of Ultimate Bliss and Peace.

When reborn in the Western Land,
I will perfect and completely fulfill
Without exception these Great Vows,
To delight and benefit all beings.

~The Vows of Samantabhadra
Avatamsaka Sutra
DEDICATION OF MERIT

May the merit and virtue accrued from this work adorn Amitabha Buddha’s Pure Land, repay the four great kindnesses above, and relieve the suffering of those on the three paths below.

May those who see or hear of these efforts generate Bodhi-mind, spend their lives devoted to the Buddha Dharma, and finally be reborn together in the Land of Ultimate Bliss.

Homage to Amita Buddha!

NAMO AMITABHA
南無阿彌陀佛

財團法人佛陀教育基金會印贈
台北市杭州南路一段五十五號十一樓

Printed and donated for free distribution by
The Corporate Body of the Buddha Educational Foundation
11F., 55 Hang Chow South Road Sec 1, Taipei, Taiwan, R.O.C.
Tel: 886-2-23951198 , Fax: 886-2-23913415
Email: overseas@budaedu.org
Website:http://www.budaedu.org

This book is strictly for free distribution, it is not for sale.
Printed in Taiwan
3,000 copies; February 2012
EN014-10111